LATVIEŠU VALODAS MĀCĪBA IESĀCĒJIEM

J. Lelis

BASIC LATVIAN I

R-5.1 VOCABULARY

NOUNS - MASCULINE:

persons:

vīrietis, -tim	man, male
brālēns, -nam	masc. cousin
kungs, kungam	lord, Mr.
palīgs, -līgam	masc. helper, aide

nouns from verbs:

vadītājs, -tājam	leader; manager
pārdevējs, -ēja	salesman
brauciens, -ienam	[illegible] trip
ēdiens, ēdienam	food
dzēriens, -ienam	drink

materials:

koks, kokam	wood
papīrs, papīram	paper
metāls, metālam	metal

miscellaneous nouns:

apavi, apaviem	footwear
apģērbs, -bam	clothing
bars, baram	crowd
centrs, centram	center
cents, centam	cent
dolārs, dolāram	dollar
dvielis, -lim	towel
gabals, gabalam	piece
gals, galam	end, tip
krīts, krītam	chalk
lielums, -umam	size
lietus, lietum	rain
pāris, pārim	pair
pāris adv.	a few, a pair
sēdeklis, -eklim	seat
veikals, -lam	store
ēdienu veikals	diner
pārtikas veikals	grocery store
universālveikals	department store

NOUNS - FEMININE:

sieviete, -tei	woman, female
māsīca, -sīcai	fem. cousin
kundze, kundzei	lady, Mrs.
palīdze, -dzei	fem. helper, aide
vadītāja, -tājai	fem. leader, manager
pārdevēja, -ēja	saleslady
brauciena, -ienai	[illegible] trip
pirksana, -šanai	buying
izpārdošana, -šanai	sale
[illegible]	cloth, fabric
[illegible]	leather; fur; skin
plastmasa, -masai	plastic
cena, cenai	price
cenas zīme	price tag
daļa, daļai	part, portion
firma, firmai	firm, company
ģimene, -enei	family
iela, ielai	street
[illegible]ela, -ai	side street
kabata, -tai	pocket
lete, letei	counter
mašīna, mašīnai	machine, engine; car
automašīna	motor vehicle, car
kravas (auto)mašīna	"cargo vehicle", truck, van
naûda, naûdai	money
nodaļa, -ļai	section, department
[illegible] (nedēļas)	weekend
pārtika, -kai	food(stuffs), provisions
prece, precei	article/thing for sale
riepa, riepai	tire
tāfele, -lei	chalkboard, blackboard
vasara, -rai	summer

PRONOUNS:

nekâds, nekâda	no, not a
kaut kas	something
viss kas	all kinds of things
viss kas cits	everything else

ADJECTIVES:

dārgs, dārga	dear, expensive
pieskaņots, -ota	matching
vajadzīgs, -īga	needed, necessary

ADVERBS:

daudz	much	labâk	better	tomēr	still, nevertheless
vairâk	more	pārâk	too, overly	klāt	near, close; present
maz	little, few	tālâk	further	pavisam	in sum/all; totally
mazâk	less	vismaz	at least	no kurienes	where from, whence
drusku	a little, a bit	gandrīz	almost, nearly	no turienes	from there
				no šejienes	from here

FUNCTION WORDS:

cik	intr: how much/many	ne tikai - bet arī	conj: not only - but also
kamēr	intr: while		

LATVIEŠU VALODAS MĀCĪBA IESĀCĒJIEM

Latvian Ev. Lutheran
Church of New York
LIBRARY
BROOKLYN, N.Y. 11215

J. Lelis

BASIC LATVIAN I

©
1984
Amerikas Latviešu Apvienība

This book can also be used in free form tutoring programs by persons wishing to study Latvian on their own, at their own pace with the help of any available native speaker of Latvian. It is mostly for such use that the grammar sections of this book include detailed explanations of all kinds of minor points that in classroom situations are left to the discretion of the professional teacher.

The language and methodology used in this volume is meant for adult and and teenage students. The reading selections and most of the exercises could be used on the elementary school level also, but in such a case the teacher has to reword and even reorganize most of the grammar sections to make them a bit more acceptable and better understod by the children.

I should like to thank my former students and graduate assistants in the Basic Latvian summer classes during the years this course has been taught at Western Michigan university. Your cooperation has helped to shape this book and the whole undertaking of organizing and teaching Basic Latvian.
I must single out Dzidra Liepiņa-Rodiņa, now a Ph. D. in Linguistics candidate at the University of Minnesota, who has worked with the Basic Latvian course from its inception and has helped to plan and prepare materials most of which will be included in the Basic Latvian II volume. Her collaborative contributions in this volume are best seen in the Subunit 1.2 dialogues and and all vocabulary supplements.

Last, but not least, I should like to thank the Department of Languages and Linguistics and the Division of Continuing Education, Western Michigan University, under whose auspices Latvian Studies Summer Program was organized and has prospered. My special thanks go to Robert A. Palmatier, Chairman of the Department of Languages and Linguistics, whose collegiality and support I have enjoyed teaching the Latvian courses and developing materials for them.

The Workbook for Basic Latvian I has been planned as a separate volume. It includes exercises and drills arranged according to the subunits of this book. However, some copiable worksheets are included in this volume.

J. Lelis

September, 1984

C O N T E N T S

Preface i
Contents iii
Introduction: The Latvian Language . . vii

UNIT ONE: GETTING ACQUAINTED WITH LATVIAN SOUNDS, SPELLING, AND WORD AND SENTENCE RHYTHMS . . . . . p. 1
Lesson 1.1: Latvian Alphabet . . . . . " 3
Special Sound Features . . . . . " 4
Supplement 1.1-A: Samples of Sounds for Exercises . . . . " 6
Lesson 1.2: Latvian Sounds in Contexts . . . . . " 9
The Latvian Sound System . . . . . " 9
Intonations or Pitches . . . . . " 10
Phrase and Sentence Stress . . . . . " 10
Reading 1.2: "Būsim pazīstami!" 'Let's Get Acquainted' five stock-phrase dialogues . . . . . " 11
Supplement 1.2-A: List of General Stock Phrases . . . . " 13
" " **B**: List of Phrases for the Classroom . . . " 14

UNIT TWO: INTRODUCTION TO LATVIAN INFLECTIONS AND SENTENCE STRUCTURES . p. 17
Lesson 2.1: Using the Principal Parts of the Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs; Forming Simple Sentences with Linking and Action Verbs . . " 19
Introduction to Latvian Word Classes . . . . . " 19
Nouns & Declension Cases . . . . . " 20
Pronouns . . . . . " 21
Sentence Structures . . . . . " 22
Questions: **Vai**- and **K**-types . . . . . " 22
Reading 2.1: "Kas tu esi?" 'Who/What Are You?' . . . . . " 23
Vocabulary 2.1 . . . . . " 25
Supplement 2.1: List of Occupations, Professions, Positions . " 26
Lesson 2.2: The Plurals; Modifier-Noun Agreement . . . . . " 29
Making of Plurals . . . . . " 29
Modifier-Noun Agreement in Gender, Number and Case . . . . " 30
Sentence Stress and Word Order . . . . . " 31
Plural Forms of **būt** 'be' and **nebūt** 'not be' . . . . . " 31
Reading 2.2: "Skolnieki un skolnieces" 'Schoolboys and Schoolgirls' . . . . . " 32
Vocabulary 2.2 . . . . . " 35
Supplement 2.2: Kinship and Age Terms . . . . . " 36
Lesson 2.3: Genders Extended to Things; Possessive Structures . . . . " 37
Feminine **i**-Stem Nouns . . . . . " 37
Possessive Structures . . . . . " 38
Possessive Structure Questions . . . . . " 39
Reading 2.3: "Kas mums ir?" 'What do we have?' . . . . . " 39
Vocabulary 2.3 . . . . . " 42
Supplement 2.3: Human Body Parts . . . . . " 43

UNIT THREE: THE LOCATIVE CASE; THE PRESENT TENSE . . . . . p. 45
Lesson 3.1: The Locative Case . . . . . " 47
Notes on Masc. **u**- & **i**-Stem Nouns, the Pronoun **šis** 'this' . " 47
Present Tense on **iet** 'walk, go' . . . . . " 47
Locative Case Formations . . . . . " 48

(Lesson 3.1) Sentences with Predicate Adjectives . . . . . p. 48
Predicate Locatives . . . . . " 49
Reading 3.1: "Kāda izskatās māja?" 'How Does the House Look?' " 49
Vocabulary 3.1 . . . . . " 51
Supplements 3.1: Contrastive Adjectives . . . . . " 52
Declension Chart with Locatives Added . . " 53
Declension Chart, Blank (for Write-Ins) . . " 54
Lesson 3.2: Demonstrative Pronouns; Verb Conjugation Patterns . . . . " 55
Locatives Used as Prepositional Adverbs . . . . . " 55
Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . . " 55
Divisions of Latvian Verbs . . . . . " 56
Present Tense Ending Sets . . . . . " 56
Present Tense Conjugation Examples . . . . . " 57
The Question **Kas tas ir?** 'What is that?' and Its Answers . . " 57
Reading 3.2: "Šis un tas." 'This and That.' . . . . . " 58
Vocabulary 3.2 . . . . . " 61
List of Adverbial Locatives . . . . . " 61
Supplement 3.2: Color Adjectives . . . . . " 62
Lesson 3.3: Locatives (Ctd.); **Tas** Used As 'It'; Reflexive Verbs . . . " 63
Clock Time Phrases with Full Hours . . . . . " 63
Locative Objects . . . . . " 64
Locatives with Clothes-Wearing Phrases . . . . . " 64
The Pronoun **tas** Used As 'It' . . . . . " 64
Adverbs of Manner: Their Formation and Use . . . . . " 64
Reflexive Verb Functions & Present Tense Endings . . . . " 65
Reflexive Verbs, Present Tense Conjugation Examples . . . " 66
Idiomatic Structures with **patikt** 'like', **piestāvēt** 'suit' and **sāpēt** 'ache' . . . . . " 66
Questions and Clauses of Time, Manner and Reason . . . . " 67
Reading 3.3: "Kā tu uzvedies stundās?" 'How Do You Behave in (Your) Classes/Lessons?' . . . . . " 68
Vocabulary 3.3 . . . . . " 71
Supplement 3.3: Items of Clothing . . . . . " 73

UNIT FOUR: THE ACCUSATIVE CASE; THE PAST TENSE . . . . . p. 75
Lesson 4.1: Learning the Accusative Case; Summing Up the Present Tense . " 77
The Accusative Case Formation . . . . . " 77
The Direct Object; Prepositional Objects . . . . . " 78
The Infinitive . . . . . " 78
Reflexive Pronouns 79
Present Tense Patterns of the 1st Conjugation Verbs 79
The Imperative 81
Base-End Palatalizations and Iotizations 82
WordOrder Changes for Stylistic Purposes 82
The pronoun Object before the Verb 83
Questions and Answers Involving Accusatives 83
The Pronoun **viss**, Plural **visi** 83
Half-Hour Time Phrases 84
Verb Prefixes 84
Reading 4.1:"Taisies un ej uz skolu!" 'Get Ready & Go to School' 85
Vocabulary 4.1 87
Additional Reading Exercises 89
Supplements 4.1: Table and Kitchen Vocabulary 91
Declension Chart with Accusatives Added . . . 94
How to Use Verb Sheets 95
Verb Sheet Sample for Active Verbs 97
Verb Sheet Sample for Reflexive Verbs . . . 99

Lesson 4.2: The Past Tense, the Diminutives . . . . . p. 101
The Accusative Singular Preposition Set . . . . . " 101
Time Accusatives . . . . . " 102
Directional Phrases . . . . . " 102
Diminutive Uses and Formation . . . . . " 103
The Pronoun **pats** . . . . . " 103
Phrasal Pronouns . . . . . " 104
Completion of the Present Tense Conjugation . . . . . " 104
The Past Tense Personal Ending Sets . . . . . " 104
The Past Tense Conjugation Examples . . . . . " 105
Deriving the Reflexive from the Active . . . . . " 106
A Review of Dependent Clauses . . . . . " 107
Dative Subject Structures with **veikties** 'be good at', **iet** 'do /fare' and **likties** 'seem' . . . . . " 107
Derivations of Nouns with **-šana** and **-ums** . . . . . " 108
Special Uses of **ar**, **pakaļ** and **līdz(i)** . . . . . " 108
Reading 4.2: "Ko tu šonedēļ darīji?" What Did You Do This Week? 109
Vocabulary 4.2 . . . . . p. 113
Nouns Made From Verbs . . . . . " 114
Additional Reading Exercises . . . . . " 115

UNIT FIVE: THE GENITIVE CASE; THE FUTURE TENSE; THE CARDINAL NUMBERS . p. 117
Lesson 5.1: Learning the Genitive Case . . . . . " 119
Formation of Genitives . . . . . " 119
Possessive and Descriptive Genitives . . . . . " 120
Genitives with Certain Adverbs and Prepositions . . . . . " 121
Genitives with Verbs of Lack or Absence . . . . . " 121
Questions and Answers that Involve Genitives . . . . . " 122
The Uses of **kāds** and **nekāds** . . . . . " 122
Reading 5.1: "Mūsu sestdienas rīta brauciens" 'Our Saturday Morning Trip' . . . . . " 123
Vocabulary 5.1 . . . . . " 126
Nouns Made from Verbs . . . . . " 127
Additional Reading Exercises . . . . . " 128
Supplements 5.1: Feminine **i**- and **e**-Stem Nouns . . . . . " 130
Masculine **i**-Stem Nouns . . . . . " 131
Declension Chart with Genitives Added . . " 132
Lesson 5.2: Learning the Future Tense and the Numbers System . . . . p. 133
The Future Tense Personal Ending Sets . . . . . " 133
The Future Tense Conjugation Examples . . . . . " 133
The Exhortative Use of the 1st Plural Future Forms . . . " 134
The Cardinal Numbers System . . . . . " 135
Phrasal Numbers Ending in **viens** / **viena** . . . . . " 135
Numbers Placing Nouns in the Genitive Plural . . . . . " 136
Amount and Measure Genitives . . . . . " 136
The Number Nouns **simts** '100' and **tūkstotis** '1000' . . . . " 137
Descriptive Genitives with Geographical Names . . . . . " 137
The Genitive Singular Preposition Set . . . . . " 138
Expressions of faring, being, feeling well / not well . . " 138
The Structures with the Verb **pietikt** 'have/be enough' . . " 139
Phrases Expressing Minutes to and past the Hour / Half Hour " 139
Reading 5.2: "Ko darīsim vasaras brīvlaikā?" ' What Will We Do During the Summer Vacation?' . . . . . " 140
Vocabulary 5.2 . . . . . " 143
Additional F**i** and M**i** Nouns . . . . . " 144

(Lesson 5.2) Additional Reading Exercises . . . . . p. 145
List of Prepositions with Genitive Singular . . . . . " 147
Supplement 5.2: Selected North American Placenames . . . " 148

LATVIAN - ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . . p. 149

ENGLISH - LATVIAN VOCABULARY . . . . . p. 161

ADDENDA: WORK SHEETS AND CHARTS . . . . . p. 175
A Sample Blank for Conjugation Exercises . . . . . " 177
A Sample Blank for Declension Exercises . . . . . " 178
Noun Declension Patterns Chart . . . . . " 179
Present Tense & Imperative Patterns, I. Conjugation . . . . " 180
Present Tense & Imperative Patterns, II. & III. Conjugations . " 181

THE LATVIAN LANGUAGE

Latvian and English are remotely related; they both belong to the Indo-European family of languages. Latvian belongs to the Baltic branch with Lithuanian as its only extant close relative whereas English belongs to the Germanic branch with German, Dutch and Scandinavian languages as its near relatives. The use of English has expanded to all continents; Latvian is fully used only within its narrow national borders in Northeast Europe. Nevertheless, Latvian today is fully capable to express the complexities of modern civilization in all its aspects; it uses the modern media, possesses an expanding literature and maintains institutions of culture and higher learning.

Besides being a modern language, Latvian has retained many archaisms in its structure that English has shed centuries or even thousands of years ago. Latvian still uses hundreds of suffixes that make the declenional cases, various verbal and participial forms and new words from existing bases. In this Latvian and English represent two different language types: Latvian, with its multitude of affixes, is a syntactic language whereas English is of the analytical type. This difference will be demonstrated throughout this volume: where Latvian has a single word with one or more suffixes, the English equivalent of it will usually be a phrase of two or more separate words.

As in the rest of Europe, there was no common national language in Latvia during the Middle Ages, only closely related dialects of Baltic origin. Like many other smaller nations, the Latvians had the misfortune to fall under a foreign rule. In subjugation the growth to nationhood was slow and painful. No native culture or literature could develop comparable to that of the sovereign countries of Western Europe. The centers of culture that grew up in the land were foreign in their language and spirit. Like Basques, Bretons or the Welsh, Latvians could enter the larger word only through the culture media of their subjugators. The educated persons were lost to the nation because by being educated they automatically chose an alien language and culture. The meager literature that appeared in Latvian from the end of the 16th to the beginning of the 19th centuries was either religious or narrowly utilitarian, written by the alien masters for their servant class. With some exceptions, most of these writings display misunderstood language structure and stilted expression.

Despite its relegation to a lower class status, the living Latvian language never lost its ancient richness of form and expression. Through the centuries it undervent a consolidation process and developed an "underground" literary tradition truly national in its scope. This folk literature reflected the whole rural world and its experiences. When it began to be collected, Latvian folksongs alone yielded over 90.000 originals with their variants topping one million. During the 19th century, when the Latvians began to strive for greater and greater independence in all areas of their life, the language of the people and of folk literature became the foundation for the new national medium. Poets and writers of notable talents helped to polish the new literary language and adjust it to the needs of the modern life. Its adjustment for scientific uses followed. Today we have Standard Latvian that is also the spoken language in the families of educated Latvians. Mainly it contains the linguistic features of Central Latvia, but other regions have also made their contributions.

UNIT ONE

LESSONS 1.1 AND 1.2 (I. & II.)

GETTING ACQUAINTED WITH LATVIAN SOUNDS,

SPELLING, AND WORD AND SENTENCE RHYTHMS

GRAMMAR:

THE LATVIAN ALPHABET: THE SYMBOLS AND THE SOUNDS THEY REPRESENT

THE SPECIAL FEATURES OF LATVIAN SPELLING AND PRONUNCIATION

THE LATVIAN SOUNDS IN A SYSTEM + THE STRESS AND PITCH FEATURES

THE LATVIAN SOUNDS IN WORD, PHRASE AND SENTENCE CONTEXTS

VOCABULARY:

STOCK EXPRESSIONS FOR SOCIAL AND CLASSROOM SITUATIONS

SUPPLEMENTS:

SAMPLES OF CERTAIN LATVIAN SOUNDS (FOR EXERCISES)

LISTS OF PHRASES FOR GENERAL AND CLASSROOM USES

I. LESSON 1.1

LATVIAN ALPHABET

The Latvian alphabet uses twenty-two Roman letters. Eleven letters are used TWICE: with no additions (as in English) and with special additions called **diacritic marks**. In three instances, **two-letter** combinations (**ch, dz, dž**) are used to mark **single** sounds. Four letters found in English texts - **q, w, x, y** - are not used at all.

The DIACRITIC MARKS are special signs added either above or below the regular letters. In Latvian they indicate long vowels (e.g., **ā, ē**) and **palatal consonants** (**š, ņ**). Note that ¯ replaces the dot on i - ī.

LET-TERS:	ENGLISH APPROXIMATIONS:	LATVIAN EXAMPLES:	AND MEANINGS:
A, a	y**a**cht, S**a**r**a**h	**a**p, m**a**z**a**, j**a**	around, small, if
Ā, ā	f**a**ther, c**a**r	**ā**tra, maz**ā**, j**ā**	fast, the small, yes
B, b	**b**ut, ra**bb**it	**b**et, la**b**a, gri**b**	but, good, want
C, c	**ts**e-**ts**e, ma**ts**	**c**ik, sau**c**am, sau**c**	how many, we call, call
Č, č	**ch**urch, ma**tch**	**č**etri lī**č**i	four bays
D, d	**d**oor, be**d**	**d**ivas **d**urvis, tagad	twoo doors, now
Dz, dz	be**ds**	**dz**er, dau**dz**i, dau**dz**	drink, many, much
Dž, dž	ju**dg**e, **g**in	**dž**ina, da**dž**i	of gin, thistles
E, e	1. **e**ll, m**e**t 2. A**l**, m**a**t	**e**s, z**e**me, c**e**l! m**e**t!	I, earth, lift! throw!
		v**e**s**e**ls, z**e**ma, m**e**t	whole, low, throws
Ē, ē	1. no such E. sound 2. Amer. **a**fter, **l**ast	m**ē**s, sp**ē**l**ē**, dr**ē**be	we, play, cloth
		ēna, z**ē**ni, s**ē**ta	
F, f	**f**act, **ph**otograph	**f**akts, **f**otograf**s**	fact, photographer
G, g	**g**et, le**g**	**g**ulta, drau**g**i, de**g**	bed, friends, burn
Ģ, ģ	no such E. sound	**ģ**imene, ku**ģ**is	family, ship
H, h	**h**air, **h**uge	**h**okejs, **h**iēna	hockey, hyena
I, i	**i**t, p**i**ll	**i**r, r**i**t, l**a**i, velt**i**	is, roll, let, in vain
Ī, ī	**ea**t, p**ee**l, sh**e**	**ī**ra, r**ī**t, velt**ī**	rowed, to swallow, bestows
J, j	**y**ou, ro**y**al, bu**y**	**j**ā, bi**j**a, le**j**, lem**j**	yes, was, pour, decide
K, k	**sc**ope, **sk**it, ra**ck**	**k**ar, pi**k**a, lau**k**i, nā**k**	hang, lump, fields, come
Ķ, ķ	no such E. sound	**ķ**er, pi**ķ**a, lau**ķ**i	nab, of tar, hillbillies

L, l	**l**oud, e**l**ement, a**ll**	**l**ai, me**ll**ene, ce**l**i, ce**l**!	let, blueberry, knee, lift!
Ļ, ļ	no such E. sound	**ļ**audis, e**ļ**ļa, ce**ļ**i, ce**ļ**	people, oil, knees, lift
M, m	**m**ouse, cra**m**	**m**ēs, **m**u**m**s, **m**a**m**ma, ka**m**	we, to us, mommy, whom
N, n	**n**ame, tra**in**, a**n**y	**n**e, ma**n**a, A**n**na, ma**n**	not, my, Ann, to me
Ņ, ņ	no such E. sound	**ņ**ęm, ma**ņ**a, Anni**ņ**!	take, a sense, dear Ann!
O, o	1. **w**all 2. **a**ll 3. **O**lga	**o**la, **j**o**k**o**j**o**t**, **t**o **ō**da, pr**ō**za **O**lga, **ŏ**ktōbris, p**ŏ**lka	egg, jokingly, that ode, prose Olga, October, polka
P, p	**s**poon, **a**pple, ri**p**	**p**apīrs, a**p**elē, a**pp**elē, a**p**	paper, appeal, mold over, around
R, r	**b**rogue	**r**od, pa**r**unā, pā**rr**unā, ku**r**	find, talk, talk over, where
S, s	**c**ity, re**s**t, gla**ss**	**s**aka, la**s**a, ta**s**, a**ss**, pa**ts**	- say, read, that, sharp, self
Š, š	**sh**e, na**ti**on	**š**e, la**š**a, a**šs**, vi**ņš** el**š**	here, of salmon, fast, he pants
T, t	**st**op, ca**t**	**t**ē**t**is, a**t**āls, a**tt**āls, pa**t**	daddy, 2nd growth, remote, even
U, u	**p**ull, cari**bou**	**u**gu**n**s, kl**u**su**m**u, **u**pj**u**, ja**u**	fire, silence, of rivers, already
Ū, ū	**oo**ze, **boo**!	**ū**sas, **ū**pju, l**ū**dzu dab**ū**	whiskers, of owls, please get
V, v	1. **v**oice, ra**v**en 2. no**w**	**v**ar, ta**v**a, te**v**i, zi**v**is na**v**, ta**v**s, te**v**, zi**v**s	can, your-f., you, fishes isn't, your-m., to you, fish
Z, z	zebra, reason	**Z**u**z**e, gro**z**i, grie**z**	Suzy, baskets, you turn
Ž, ž	**J**aques, deci**s**ion	**ž**ē**ļ**, gro**ž**i, grie**ž**	a pity, reins, he turns

GRAMMAR 1.1: SPECIAL FEATURES OF LATVIAN SPELLING AND PRONUNCIATION

a. VOWEL LENGTHS. Latvian has short and long vowels. The bar above the vowel sign indicates that the vowel is long. The length difference is phonemic (grammatically distinctive): **ja** 'if' - **jā** 'yes'; **pele** 'mouse' - **pelē** 'mold'; **rit** 'roll' - **rīt** 'to swallow'; **upi** 'river' - **ūpi** 'owl'. The disregard for the vowel length in pronunciation also gives the speaker a heavy unpleasant "accent" in his Latvian.

b. THE **O**-SOUND in the native Latvian words is a diphthong /**wa**/. Only in foreign borrowings the long vowel /**ō**/ (as in **oda** 'ode') or the short vowel /**ŏ**/ (as in **polka**) appears. The special diacritics **ō**, **ŏ** are not used in the conventional spelling.

c. LATVIAN **c** AND **dz** SOUNDS are similar to the end of the word combinations **-ts** (**mats**) and **-ds** (**beds**) in English. In Latvian, however, they may appear in any position. Note that the letter **c** in Latvian designates a sound that has nothing to do with the "hard" or the "soft" **c** in English.

d. THE WEDGE-SHAPED DIACRITICAL MARK ˇ is used to designate 4 sounds: **č, dž, š, ž**. Thus a single mark serves to indicate the same feature - palatalization - for which various different letter combinations are used in English. In 2-sound clusters, ONLY THE FIRST LETTER CARRIES THE WEDGE: **aš**s, pronounced /**aš**š/ 'swift'; **mež**s /**meš**š/ 'forest'; **Džord**žs /**džorč**š/ 'George'. (The assimilation will be discussed in the Unit Two.)

e. THE "TAIL" , under the letters **ģ; ķ, ļ; ņ**, also indicates a palatalization (since the small **g** is already long downward, instead of a "tail" below, it gets a "horn" /"antenna"?/ on top - **ǵ**, not ***ǧ**). These 4 sounds have no true English equivalents. However, in some English pronunciations where the glide /**y**/ is inserted after **d-** in **due**, after **T-** in **Tuesday**, after **l-** in **lute** and after **n-** in **new**, their qualities may approach the Latvian **ǵ, ķ, ļ** and **ņ** respectively. (The traditional grammars prescribe also an **ŗ**-sound, which we will not use in our language materials.)

f. THE **F-** AND **H**-SOUNDS in Latvian are are quite recent additions through borrowings from other languages. In latvian the **h**-sound is a consonant (not a breath as in English). It has two phonetic (grammatically nondistinctive) variants: a hard back sound *[x]* with low vowels (**hokejs** 'hockey', **chaoss** 'chaos', **Bachs** 'Bach') and and a more fronted palatalized sound *[ç]* with high vowels (**hiēna** 'hyena', **technika** 'technique'). In Latvia only the letter **h** is used to write Greek and German words that are spelled with **ch**: **haoss**, **tehnika**, **Bahs** -- the same as **f** used for the Greek **ph**: **fotografs** 'photographer'.

g. DOUBLE CONSONANTS ARE PRONOUNCED LONGER than the single ones, and this length difference is also phonemic: **mana** 'my' - **manna** 'manna', **apelē** 'appeal' - **appelē** 'mold over', **parunā** 'talk a bit' - **pārrunā** 'talk over', **atāls** 'new grass' - **attāls** 'remote', **tās** 'those' - **tāss** '(birch) bark', etc.

h. LATVIAN **k, p, t** ARE NOT ASPIRATED in any positition. In English the initial sounds in **cat**, **pin**, **top** are strongly aspirated; in Latvian, however, the pronunciation is like that of the /**k**/ in English **scat**, /**p**/ in **spin**, and /**t**/ in **stop**.

i. THE LETTER **v** HAS 2 PRONUNCIATIONS. Before a vowel it is *[v]*: **var** 'can', **visi** 'all', **tava** 'your-f.', **tevi** 'you', **govis** 'cows', **zivis** 'fishes', **dzīva** 'alive-f.' Before a consonant or in the final position it is *[w]*: **tavs** 'your-m.', **tev** 'to you', **govs** 'cow', **zivs** 'fish', **dzīvs** 'alive-m.', **nav** 'is not'. In English /**v**/ and /**w**/ are two different sounds, but in Latvian they are only positional variants of the same phoneme.

j. AN OPTIONAL DIACRITICAL MARK , UNDER **ę/ę̄**. This mark is not used in the conventional spelling, but we'll use it in our vocabulary lists to indicate the pronunciation differences between the "normal **e/ē**" (without the mark) and the "broad **ę/ę̄**" - with the mark. This difference is phonemic: **met** 'you throw' - **mę̨t** 'he throws', **ēdu** 'I ate' - **ę̄du** 'I eat', etc. Note, too, that the Latvian **ē** is more like a double /**ee**/ than the diphthongal English /**ey**/.

k. ANOTHER OPTIONAL DIACRITIC MARK ˆ above certain long vowels and diphthongs will be used to mark the s.c. "broken" pitch. It too does not appear in the conventional spelling. We'll take it up in Lesson 1.2.

l. THE STRESS is usually on the first syllable of the word no matter how long it might be: **ala** 'cave', **papīri** 'papers', **fotografija** 'photograph, snapshot'. There are few exceptions that'll be handled later.

SUPPLEMENT 1.1: SAMPLES OF SOME PARTICULAR LATVIAN SOUNDS

i. NORMAL /e/ VERSUS "BROAD" /ę/

nes	'you carry'	nęs	'he/she carries'	cępure	'hat'
nesu	'I carried'	nęsu	'I carry'	vęcs vecis	'old man'
nesis	'he has carried'	nęsusi	'she has carried'	mele męlo	'liar-f. lies'
met	'you throw'	męt	'he/she throws'	Veselis vęsęls	'V. (is) healthy'
metu	'I threw'	mętu	'I throw'		
metis	'he has thrown'	mętusi	'she has thrown'	esi 'you are'	ęsam 'we are'
debesis	'the sky'	dębęsu	'of the sky'	sen 'long ago'	sęna 'ancient'

ii. SHORT /e/ VERSUS LONG /ē/

beru	'I strew'	bēru	'I poured'	ēvele	'wood-plane'	ēvelē	'he planes'
veru	'I open'	vēru	'I opened'	peli	'mouse-ac.	pēli	'pillow-ac.'
peru	'I flog'	pēru	'I flogged'	pele	'mouse'	pelē	'it molds'
mele	'liar-f.'	mēle	'tongue'	kalte	'kiln'	kaltē	'he dries'
seja	'a face'	sēja	'he tied'	vecene	'old woman'	vecenēm	'for o. women'
drebi	'you shake'	drēbi	'cloth -ac.'	iecere	'a plan'	iecerē	'he plans'

iii. SHORT /ę/ VERSUS LONG /ę̄/

sękla	'shallow-f.'	sę̄kla	'seed'	mędu	'honey-ac.'	mę̄du	'I mock'
rętas	'rare-f.pl.'	rę̄tas	'scars'	ķępa	'paw'	ķę̄pa	'bother'

iv. NORMAL /ē/ VERSUS "BROAD" /ę̄/

lēc!	'jump!'	lę̄c	'he jumps'	lēni	'slowly'	lę̄ni	'slow-m.pl.'
rēcu	'I yelled'	rę̄cu	'I jump'	vēli	'you wish'	vę̄lu	'I wish'
nebrēc!	'don't yell!'	nebrę̄c	'does't yell'	bēris	'bay horse'	bę̄rs	'bay-colored'
lēca	'he jumped'	lę̄ca	'lens'	Cēsis	'a town'	Cę̄su	'of C.'

v. SHORT /i/ VERSUS LONG /ī/

iru	'I row'	īru	'I rowed'	lika	'he/she put'	līka	'it bent'
rit	'it rolls'	rīt	'to swallow'	licis	'he has put'	līcis	'bay, gulf'
šis	'this'	šīs	'these-fem.'	pili	'palace-ac.'	pīli	'duck-ac.'
šim	'to this'	šīm	'to these-f.'	velti	'in vain'	veltī	'bestows'
kritu	'I fell'	krītu	'I fall'	bijusi	'she has been'	bijusī	'she who has been'

vi. SHORT /i/ VERSUS DIPHTHONG /ij/

pili	'palace-ac.'	pilij	'to palace'	kārti	'slat-ac.'	kārtij	'to slat'
plīti	'stove-ac.'	plītij	'to stove'	rūti	'pane-ac.'	rūtij	'to pane'

vii. SHORT /a/ VERSUS LONG /ā/

ka	'that-rel.'	kā	'whose'	laba	'good-f.'	labā	'the good-f.'
tas	'that-m.'	tās	'those-f.'	mazas	'small-f.pl.'	mazās	'the small-f.pl.'
tam	'to that'	tām	'to those-f.'	visam	'to everything'	visām	'to all-f.pl.'
mana	'my-f.'	māna	'deceives'	sitam	'we beat-pres.'	sitām	'we beat-past'
lapa	'leaf'	lāpa	'torch'	rijat	'you swallow'	rijāt	'you swallowed'

viii. SHORT /u/ VERSUS LONG /ū/

put	'is dusty'	pūt	'you blow'	duris	'door'	dūris	'he has stabbed'
pušu	'broken'	pūšu	'I blow'	ruks	'will shrink'	rūks	'will growl'
jutu	'I felt'	jūtu	'I feel'	dabu	'nature-ac.'	dabū	'obtains'
kuru	'I kindle'	kūru	'I kindled'	vidu	'center-ac.'	vidū	'in the middle of'
suta	'steam'	sūta	'sends'	virsu	'surface-ac.'	virsū	'on top of'

ix. THE DIPHTHONG /u̯o/ (WRITTEN "o")

otro 'the 2nd-ac.'	jo 'because'	lolo 'cherishes'
ola 'egg'	no 'from'	rokot 'while digging'
oma 'mood'	ko 'whom'	jokojot 'in a joking manner'
ota 'paint brush'	šo 'this-ac.'	nolūko 'notices, marks'
osta 'haven'	to 'that-ac.'	pārkoko 'turn into wood'

x. THE SHORT /ŏ/ IN BORROWINGS (ALSO WRITTEN "o")

oktobris 'October'	ozons 'ozone'	monotons 'monotonous'
oponents 'opponent'	orātors 'orator'	Toronto 'a city in Canada'
oposums 'opossum'	doktors 'doctor'	solo 'solo'
ortodoksa 'orthodox-f.'	motori 'motors'	moto 'motto'

xi. THE DIPHTHONG /i̯e/

tie 'those'	viesiem 'for guests'	lielie 'the big ones'
tiem 'to those'	pietiek 'enough'	biezie 'the thick ones'
šie 'these'	piesieniet! 'tie to!-pl.'	riecieniem 'in slices'
ieliek 'puts in'	ielieciet! 'put in!-pl.'	pieliecieties! 'bend down!'
ielien 'penetrates'	ielieniet! 'penetrate!-pl.'	pieciem mietiem 'for five poles'

xii. THE DIPHTHONGS WITH /r/

ir 'is'	ber 'strews'	kur 'where'
irt 'to row'	der 'suits'	tur 'there'
cirps 'will clip'	ver 'opens'	šurp 'hither'
virsū 'on top'	ieper 'spanks'	iedur 'stabs once'
tapirs 'tapir'	necęr 'hopes not'	nobur 'enchants'

xiii. THE SOUNDS WRITTEN "h" OR "ch"

Pronounced /x/ (near a,o,u):	Pronounced /ç/ (near i, e):
chaotiski 'chaotically'	hēlijs 'helium'
hokejs 'hockey'	himna 'hymn'
humors 'humor'	ichtiologi 'ichthyologists'
Bachs 'Bachs'	technika 'technique'
juchtāda 'juft leather'	architekts 'architect'

xiv. THE AFFRICATES /c/ AND /dz/

f. lēta	lęca 'lens'	dzer 'drinks'
m. lēts 'cheap'	cālis 'chick'	dzina 'chased'
lęc 'jumps'	cept 'to fry'	beidz 'finishes'
f. cita	cūka 'pig'	lūdzu 'please'
m. cits 'other'	circenis 'cricket'	paredz 'foresees'

DOUBLE /cc/: lītdzcilvēks 'fellow man', lītdzcietīga 'compassionate-f.'

xv. DOUBLE /ss/ AND /zz/

viss 'all'	aizsien 'ties up'	aizzogas 'sneaks away'
gaiss 'air'	bezspęks 'feebleness'	bezzobu 'toothless'
kluss 'silent'	izsauc 'calls out'	izzobo 'tease'
balss 'voice'	uzsit 'hits on'	uzzib 'flash'

xvi. DOUBLE /tt/ AND /dd/

attaisa 'opens'	cittautu 'foreign'	atdeva 'gave back'
attęlo 'depicts'	goddevīga 'respectful-f.'	atdabū 'gets back'

xvii. DOUBLE /pp/ AND /bb/

apput 'gets dusty'	labprāt 'willingly'	apbur 'bewitches'
apprec 'marries'	apbrīno 'admires'	apbrauc 'rides around'

xviii. DOUBLE /mm/, /nn/, /ll/, /rr/

Emma	'Emma'	Anna	'Ann'	elle	'hell'	urrā!	'hurrah!'
summa	'sum'	kanna	'jug'	nulle	'zero'	pārredz	'surveys'
dilemma	'dilemma'	panna	'pan'	balle	'ball'	pārrunā	'talks over'
programma	'program'	vanna	'bath'	bullis	'bull'	pārraide	'broadcast'

xix. DOUBLE /šš/ AND /žž/

mežs	'forest'	uzšūt	'make clothing'	izžaut	'hang to dry'
plašs	'spacious'	izšaut	'fire a shot'	izžuva	'dried out'
gaišs	'light'	aizšāva	'wounded'	aizžogo	'fences in'

xx. THE PALATAL /ļ/

ļoti	'very'	2.sg.	mal	vs.	3.sg.	maļ	'grind'	galu	'end-ac.'	vs.	gaļu 'meat-ac.'
ļipa	'scut'	"	"	kal	"	"	" kaļ	'forge'	dala	'divides'	" daļa 'portion'
ļaudis	'people'	"	"	vel	"	"	" veļ	'roll'	celi	'knee-ac'	" ceļi 'knees'

DOUBLE: eļļa 'oil' | ac.sg. bulli vs. nom.pl. buļļi 'bull(s)'
baļļa 'tub' | " " rulli " " " ruļļi 'roll(s)'

xxi. THE PALATAL /ņ/

ņem	'takes'	suni	'dog-ac.'	vs.	suņi	'dogs'
ņirdz	'grins'	mana	'senses'	"	maņa	'a sense'
ņaud	'meows'	zinu	'I know'	"	ziņu	'message-ac.'
ņurd	'grumbles'	skanot	'a-sounding'	"	skaņot	'to tune'

xxii. THE PALATALIZED /ķ/

ķepa	'paw'	kaķis	'cat'	ķiķina	'giggles'	kašķis	'itch'
ķemme	'comb'	lauķis	'hillbilly'	ķīmiķis	'chemist-m.'	sevišķi	'es-pecially'
Ķīna	'China'	peļķe	'puddle'	ķīmiķe	'chemist-f.'		
ķirsis	'cherry'	zeķe	'sock'	ķauķis	'warbler (white throat)'		

xxiii. THE PALATALIZED /ģ/

ģība	'swooned'	ģilde	'guild'	ģeķis	'fop'
ģimene	'family'	ģitāra	'guitar'	ķeģis	'crutch'
ģērbu	'I put on'	ģēnijs	'genius'	ķieģelis	'brick'
kuģis	'ship'	ģenerālis	'general'	ģeorģīne	'dahlia'
ģeologe	'geologist-f.'	ģeologs	'geologist-m.'	ģeoloģija	'geology'

II. LESSON 1.2

LATVIAN SOUNDS IN CONTEXTS

GRAMMAR 1.2: LATVIAN SOUND SYSTEM

a. Arranged as a phonological system, the Latvian sounds may look like this:

VOWELS, SHORT	i	e	ę	a	o	u	(ŏ in regional & foreign words only)
VOWELS, LONG	ī	ē	ę̄	ā	(ō)	ū	(ō in few borrowings only)
VOCALIC GLIDES	i̯					u̯	(i̯ spelled "i" or "j"; u̯ spelled "u" or "v")
their CONSONANTAL VARIANTS	j					v	
UNIQUE DIPHTHONGS	i̯e					u̯o	(spelled "ie" and "o" respectively)
CONVENTIONAL DIPHTHONGS:		ei̯		ai̯		ui̯	
		eu̯		au̯			
NASALS:		n	ņ	m			
LIQUIDS:		l	ļ	r			

PURE CONSONANTS:	LABIALS	DENTALS	PALATALS	VELARS
STOPS, NONSPIRANT, VOICED	b	d	ģ	g
" " VOICELESS	p	t	ķ	k
" AFFRICATE, VOICED		dz	dž	
" " VOICELESS		c	č	
CONTINUANTS, FRICATIVE, VOICED		z	ž	
" " VOICELESS	f	s	š	h

b. The letter "v" at the end of a word or before a consonant must be pronounced as English "w": **tev** 'to you', **nav** 'is not', **zivs** 'fish', **tuvs** 'near-m.', **govs** 'cow', **Dievs** 'God', etc. When followed by a vowel, "v" is pronounced normally: **tevi** 'you-ac.', **nav alus** 'there is no beer', **tuvu** 'nearby', **zivis** 'fishes', **govis** 'cows', **Dievam** 'to God'.

c. The combinations of sounds are also different in each language. Thus Latvian tolerates the combinations /kn/, /gn/, which English does not: **knābis** 'beak', **knieba** 'pinched', **knosās** 'fidgets'; **gnīda** 'nit', **gnoms** 'gnome', **gnu** 'a species of antelope', etc. Latvian even pronounces the initial clusters /ks-/ and /ps-/ in Greek borrowings: **ksilofons** 'xylophone', **psīche** 'psyche'. Besides, Latvian has various sound combinations unique to it: **sprakšķis** 'crackle', **pirksts** 'finger', **īkšķis** 'thumb', **režģis** 'web', **kusls** 'weak', **zvaigzne** 'star', **zvaigžņu** 'of stars', **ligzda** 'nest', **siksna** 'belt', **šļūc** 'slides', etc.

d. Besides the diphthongs shown above, the combinations of a vowel and a nasal or a liquid in the same syllable must also be considered diphthongal: **velk** 'pulls' **kur** 'where', **sen** 'long ago', **rimst** 'becalms', **maļ** 'grinds', **viņš** 'he'.

(GR-1.2) INTONATIONS (PITCHES) IN LONG SYLLABLES

e. Long syllables (containing long vowels or diphthongs) carry certain tonality that is perceived as 2-3 kinds of different "pitches" whose exact qualities may vary from a region to region. In the whole Latvian area grammatical contrasts can be made by opposing the s.c. **"broken" pitch** to what we'll call **"normal" pitch.** The latter has regional varieties although mostly it has an evenly drawn out articulation. The broken pitch contains a glottal stop: during its articulation the glottis closes and opens again splitting the vocalic sequence in two (hence the name of the pitch). In West Latvia the broken pitch is found in more words than in the eastern part. We shall record the broken pitch only in those instances where it is used by all. The normal pitch will not be marked since it occurs most often. The broken pitch will be marked (where necessary) by the sign of "ˆ".

f. In the word bases the pitch contrasts are important to learn, because they may indicate different meanings: **rīt** 'to swallow' vs. **rît** 'tomorrow'; **griezt** 'to rotate' vs. **griêzt** 'to cut'; **mēs** 'we' vs. **mês** 'will bleat'; **vęlu** 'I wish' vs. **vęlu** 'late'; **kā** 'whose' vs. **kâ** 'how'; **osta** 'port' vs. **ôsta** 'sniffs'; **lūgs** [**lūks**] 'will beg' vs. **lûks** 'willow bark'. The broken pitch can associate with any diphthong: **pirmais** 'the first', **ņemt** 'take', **laîst**, 'let', **laûzt** 'break', **aîkt** 'yearn', etc.

g. Certain suffixes carry the broken pitch; among them are:
LOCATIVE ENDINGS: **plītî/plītîs** 'in the oven(s)', **kokâ/kokôs** 'in the tree(s)', **zemê** /'on earth', etc.
COMPARATIVE MARKER **-âk-**: **labâks** 'better', **vairâk** 'more', etc.
ADJECTIVAL FORMANT **-îg-**: **priecîgs** 'merry', **laimîgi** 'happy-m.pl.'
LONG FUTURE ENDINGS: **darîs** 'will do', **mazgâs** 'will wash', **meklês** 'will seek', **dabûs** 'will get', **izlabôs** 'will correct', etc.
REFLEXIVE ENDINGS: **skatôs** 'I look', **skatījâs** 'he looked', **skatîsiês** 'he will look'.
(In the last example note how both the future long **-îs-** and the reflexive **-iês** have the broken pitch.)

h. Therefore, some meaning contrasts can be expressed by pitch differences in the end syllables: **debesis** 'sky' vs. **debesîs** 'in the sky'; **zīmē** 'draws' vs. **zîmê** 'in the sign'; **labā** 'the good one-f' vs. **labâ** 'in (something) good'; **labos** 'the good ones-m.ac.pl.' - **labôs** 'will repair'.

PHRASE AND SENTENCE STRESS

i. Apart from the 1st syllable stress in the words, there are also stresses for the whole sentences; that gives the speech a certain rhythm. If the stress pattern is not altered artificially for some reason, usually there is a light stress at the start of the sentence and a heavier stress at the end: **Atvedu tev mazu DĀVANU.** 'I brought you a little gift.' **Kā tev tagad KLĀJAS?** 'How are you now doing?'
In compound and complex sentences, each clause repeats the sentence stress rhythm: **Skolotāja jautā abām MEITENĒM, kā viņas SAUC.** 'The teacher asks both girls how they are called.'

j. If a sentence or a clause has only two words, only the end stress is maintained: **Meitene LASA.** 'The girl is reading.' **Kas TUR?** 'Who is there?'

k. Pronounced in isolation, the phrases assume the same stress patterns: **māja kalna GALĀ** 'a house on the top of the hill', **ļoti ŽĒL** 'a great pity', etc.

l. The various particles and one-syllable adverbs and pronouns HAVE NO STRESS OF THEIR OWN. In pronunciation they usually join the word that follows them: **ne šis, ne tas** 'neither this, nor that'; **kur biji?** 'where were you?'; **viņš un viņa** 'he & she'; **pie mājas** 'near the house', **te papīrs** 'here (is some) paper'; **tas koks** 'that tree'; etc. But in the FINAL POSITION the particle MUST ASSUME THE STRESS: **šur un tur** 'here and there'.

m. Perhaps for the reasons stated in k. & l. above, some adverbial compounds betray their phrasal origins by usually having their stress on their second element: **neviens** 'no one', **ikreiz** 'every time', **jebkad** 'at any time', **tepat** 'right here', **varbūt** 'maybe', **diemžēl** 'unfortunately', **labrīt** 'good morning', **labdien** 'good day', **labvakar** 'good evening', and a few more.

READING 1.2

Your first reading selection consists of several short conversations that are loaded with useful stock expressions. Your tasks are: 1. Listen to a recording or someone reading to you these utterances and get the feel of the sound patterns and sentence rhythms.

2. Try to imitate what you have just heard. Make repeated efforts to do it.

3. Pick out some useful phrases and memorize them. For your convenience, they are already set down in a list at the end of this lesson.

BŪSIM PAZĪSTAMI!	**LET'S GET ACQUAINTED!**
1. NEJAUŠI SATIEKOTIES	1. CASUALLY RUNNING INTO ONE ANOTHER
-- **Labrīt, Bērziņa kungs!**	-- Good morning, Mr. Bērziņš!
-- **Sveicināti.**	-- Hello.
-- **Kā jums klājas?**	-- How are you?
-- **Tā nekas - var iztikt. Un jums?**	-- Tolerably well. And you?
-- **Paldies, labi. Šodien būs jauks laiks, vai ne?**	-- Thank you, fine. The weather'll be nice today, won't it?
-- **Drošī vien.**	-- Probably.
-- **Jums laikam jāsteidzas?**	-- You must be in a hurry.
-- **Jā, mani gaida.**	-- Yes, I'm expected.
-- **Uz redzēšanos!**	-- I'll be seeing you.
-- **Ar Dievu.**	-- Good bye.
2. VIESĪBĀS	2. AT A PARTY
-- **Labdien!**	-- Good day! / Hello!
-- **Sveiks!**	-- Greetings. / Howdy.

-- Daudz laimes dzimšanas dienā!

-- Paldies.

-- Atvedu tev mazu dāvanu. Lūdzu.

-- Ļoti pateicos. Kas tas ir?

-- Attaisi vaļā - paskaties!

-- Tūlīt. Vai, kāds pārsteigums! Tieši to sen vēlējos.

-- Ceru, ka noderēs.

-- Vēlreiz liels paldies!

-- Lūdzu ņem par labu.

-- Happy birthday!

-- Thanks.

-- I brought you a little gift. Here.

-- Thank you very much. What is it?

-- Open it (and) take a look.

-- Just a second. Oh, what a surprise! Just what I always wanted.

-- I hope you can use it.

-- Thanks again VERY much!

-- I'm glad you like it.

3. PIE TELEFONA

-- Hallo?

-- Labvakar. Lūdzu, vai varētu runāt ar Annu?

-- Klausos. Kas lūdzu zvana?

-- Te runā Jānis.

-- Labvakar, Jāni! Kā tev iet?

-- Labi, paldies. Vai tev būtu laika šovakar iet uz kino?

-- Nē. Diemžēl esmu aizņemta. Varbūt kādu citu reizi.

-- Žēl. Ar labvakaru!

-- Ar labu nakti, Jāni! Paldies, ka piezvanīji.

-- Ne par ko.

3. ON THE TELEPHONE

-- Hello?

-- Good evening. Please may I speak with Ann?

-- Speaking. Who's calling please?

-- This is John (speaking).

-- Good evening, John. How are you?

-- Fine, thanks. Would you have time to go to the movies tonight?

-- No. Unfortunately, I'm busy. Maybe some other time.

-- Too bad. Have a good evening.

-- Good night, John. Thanks for calling.

-- That's alright.

4. RESTORĀNĀ

-- Vai varētu tev vēl ko piedāvāt?

-- Nē, paldies. Būs diezgan.

4. IN A RESTAURANT

-- Can I offer you something else?

-- No, thanks. This'll be enough.

-- Vēl jau nav nemaz tik vēls!	-- It's not so very late yet.
-- Man tomēr jātiek mājās.	-- Even so, I have to get home.
-- Bija patīkams vakars...	-- It was a nice evening...
-- Puslīdz labs.	-- Halfway decent.
-- Kā, lūdzu?	-- What was that?
-- Es teicu, ka bija jau labi.	-- I said it was alright.
-- Ceru, ka drīz atkal tā tiksimies.	-- I hope we'll meet so again soon.
-- Varbūt. Redzēsim.	-- Maybe. We'll see.
-- Nu tad - ar labu nakti!	-- Well, then - good night.
-- Dzīvo vesels.	-- Take care.

5. SANĀKSMĒ	5. AT A GATHERING
-- Atvainojiet, kāds jūsu goda vārds?	-- Excuse me, what's your (sur)name?
-- Es esmu Dzintra Puriņa. Vai varu jums pakalpot?	-- I am Dzintra Puriņš. Can I help you?
-- Man bija jāsatiek Lapiņa kundze. Varbūt jūs viņu pazīstat?	-- I had to meet Mrs. Lapiņš. Perhaps you know her?
-- Jā. Lūk, tur viņa stāv.	-- Yes, I do. See - she's standing (right) there.
-- Pateicos. Piedodiet, ka jūs traucēju.	-- I thank you. Excuse me for having bothered you.

SUPPLEMENT 1.2

LISTS OF SEPARATE PHRASES

NOTES: a. The same words in different phrases may have different shapes. This so because in Latvian the word relationships (declensional cases, verbal persons, etc.) are expressed by suffixes.

b. The differences are shown between the singular (base t-) and plural (base j-) pronoun forms and the corresponding verb endings. The plural forms are also used in the polite address.

1.2-A. General Occasions:

Paldies! / Liels paldies!	Thanks. / Thanks a lot.
Pateicos. / Ļoti pateicos.	I thank (you). I thank (you) very much.

Lūdzu. 1. You are welcome. (in response to thanks)
2. Please. (when asking for something)
Ņem/Ņemiet par labu. "Take it in good spirit" = Glad to be of any help.
Ne par ko. "(You are thanking me) for nothing" = Forget it!

Labrīt! Good morning!
Labdien! Good day! (In Latvian this is not a parting salute.)
Labvakar! Good evening!
Sveiki! 1. (meeting) How do you do! 2. (parting) So long!
Ar labvakaru! (I wish you) good evening. (a parting salute)
Ar labu nakti! Good night.
Ar Dievu! Good bye.
Uz (drīzu) redzēšanos! I'll see you (soon)!

Labu apetīti! Good appetite.
Uz veselībām! To your health!
Daudz laimes dzimšanas / vārda dienā! Happy birthday / name-day!

Kā tev/jums klājas (/iet)? How are you doing?
Man/Mums klājas (/iet) labi. I/We am/are doing well.
Un kā tev/jums? And how are you?

Vai varu tev/jums piedāvāt _ _ _ ? Can I offer you _ _ _ ?
Paldies, man visa diezgan/pietiek. Thanks, I have (had) enough of everything.
Vai varu tev/jums palīdzēt? Can I help you?
Jā, lūdzu. / Paldies, nē. Yes please. / No, thanks.

Ko tu vēlies / jūs vēlaties? What do you wish/want?
Es vēlos/gribētu _ _ _ I wish / would like to _ _ _
Lūdzu pagaidi/pagaidiet. Please wait (a little).
(Vienu) acumirkli! Just a moment!

Esiet pazīstami. X un Y. X please meet Y.
Vai varu tevi/jūs iepazīstināt ar _ _ _? Can I introduce to you _ _ _ ?
Vai jūs jau esat pazīstami/-as? Have you already met?
Priecājos. Delighted/Pleased (to meet you).
Ļoti patīkami ar jums iepazīties. It's pleasant/nice to meet you.

Kā tevi/jūs sauc? "How are you called?" = What is your name?
Es esmu _ _ _ . I am _ _ _ .
Kāds ir jūsu vārds un uzvārds? What is your given and family name?
Mans vārds (un uzvārds) ir _ _ _ . My name is _ _ _ .

Lūdzu (mani) atvaino/atvainojiet. Please excuse (me).
Lūdzu piedod/piedodiet. Please forgive me.
Es atvainojos. I apologize.
Lūdzu piedošanu. I beg (your) pardon.

Žēl. A pity. Too bad.
Vai, cik žēl! What a pity!
Man ļoti žēl, bet _ _ _ . I am very sorry, but _ _ _ .

Cik jauki (skaisti/patīkami)! How nice (beautiful/delightful)!

Tas ir labi/slikti. That is good/bad.

Kā, lūdzu? How was that please?
Lūdzu atkārtot. Please repeat.
Ko tu teici? / Ko jūs teicāt? What did you say?
Es nezinu / nesaprotu. I do not know / do not understand.

1.2-B. Classroom situations

Iesim klasē! Let's go into the classroom.
Sāksim stundu! Let's begin the lesson (period).
Lūdzu klusumu! Silence please!
Lūdzu uzmanību! Please pay attention!
Stunda beidzas. The lesson (period) is at the end.
Tagad būs starpbrīdis. Now there'll be an intermission.

Runāsim latviski! Let's speak/talk in Latvian.
Rakstīsim diktātu. We'll write a dictation.
Tas ir jāmācās no galvas. This has to be learned by heart.
Lasi/Lasiet un tulko/tulkojiet angliski. Read and translate in English.
(Pār)tulko/(Pār)tulkojiet šo teikumu/frazi angliski. Translate this sentence / phrase in English.
Lūdzu atkārto/atkārtojiet! Please repeat (it)!
Lūdzu vēlreiz (to pašu)! Please (do/say) the same again! Please once more!
Lūdzu sakiet/lasiet visi kopā! Please say/read (it) all together
Tie ir uzdevumi/vingrinājumi rītam. These are assignments/exercises for tomorrow.
Rīt būs pārbaudījums. Tomorrow (there) will be a test.
Tas ir ļoti labi. That is very good.
Tas ir pareizi/nepareizi. That is correct/incorrect.
Te ir kļūda. Here is a mistake.
labot kļūdas / kļūdu labojums to correct mistakes / mistake correction
Ko tas nozīmē? What does it mean?
Ko nozīmē vārds "lekcija"? What does the word <u>lekcija</u> mean (in English)?
Kas tas ir? What is this/that?
Lūdzu parādi/parādiet (man) _ _ _ . Please show (me) _ _ _ .
Lūdzu padod /padodiet (man) _ _ _ . Please hand (me) _ _ _ .
Vai tas ir saprotams/skaidrs? Is that understood/clear?
Vai ir kādi jautājumi? Are there any questions?

UNIT TWO

LESSONS 2.1; 2.2; 2.3 (III., IV., V.)

GETTING ACQUAINTED WITH THE BASIC FEATURES OF THE INFLECTIONAL SYSTEMS AND SYNTACTIC STRUCTURES IN LATVIAN

GRAMMAR:

THE NOMINATIVE & DATIVE SINGULAR FORMS OF NOUNS & PERSONAL PRONOUNS

THEIR CORRESPONDING PLURAL FORMS

THE DIRECT ADDRESS (VOCATIVE) FORMS WITH PERSONS' NAMES

SOME NUMERALS AND PRONOUNS TO MODIFY THE NOUNS

AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE NOUNS & THEIR MODIFIERS

USING THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERBS

CONJUGATING THE VERB būt/nebūt IN THE PRESENT TENSE

SENTENCES WITH THE LINKING VERBS (STRUCTURES OF BEING)

ACTION-VERB SENTENCES WITH INDIRECT OBJECTS

THE POSSESSIVE CONSTRUCTION (STRUCTURES OF HAVING)

VAI- & K-QUESTIONS FROM ALL THE ABOVE SENTENCE TYPES

VOCABULARY:

SOME MASCULINE AND FEMININE FIRST NAMES

SOME TERMS OF KINSHIP AND OCCUPATION

BASIC NUMERALS, PERSONAL & SOME OTHER PRONOUNS

MAIN PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY

SUPPLEMENTS:

A LIST OF OCCUPATIONS, PROFESSIONS & POSITIONS

A LIST OF KINSHIP & AGE TERMS

A LIST OF THE NAMES FOR THE HUMAN BODY PARTS

III. LESSON 2.1

BASIC USES OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF NOUNS

SUBSTITUTION OF NOUNS BY PERSONAL PRONOUNS

THE PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR FORMS OF **būt** & **nebūt**

THE USE OF THE THIRD COMMON PERSON FORMS IN ALL TENSES

STRUCTURES WITH THE LINKING VERBS

STRUCTURES WITH ACTION VERBS THAT TAKE INDIRECT OBJECTS

VAI- & K-QUESTIONS FROM THE TWO ABOVE SENTENCE TYPES

VOCABULARY: WORDS FOR SOME BASIC CLASSROOM SITUATIONS

NECESSARY PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES

SUPPLEMENTS: A LIST OF OCCUPATIONS, PROFESSIONS, POSITIONS
HOW TO WRITE WORD CARDS

2.1 GRAMMAR: INTRODUCTION TO LATVIAN WORD CLASSES

2.1.01 Latvian is a highly inflected language; it uses many inflections (suffixes) where English relies on the word order and function markers to clarify the relationships of words within an utterance.

2.1.02 **The word classes (parts of speech)** can be divided up into three systems:

a. THE DECLENSIONAL SYSTEM uses two numbers (singular & plural), two genders (masculine & feminine), 5-6 declensional cases (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, locative & sometimes vocative). The declinable word classes are the nouns and their replacers or modifiers: pronouns, numerals and adjectives.

b. THE VERBAL (CONJUGATIONAL) SYSTEM uses three voices (active, passive, reflexive), five moods (indicative, imperative, conditional, relative, debitive), three tenses (present, past, future), three persons (first, second, third), two numbers (singular, plural). Besides, there are several states - "modes" of action, such as the general (imperfective), perfective, inchoative, durative, assertive, accidental and others. The verbs constitute this system; the participles participate in both inflectional systems, the conjugational and also declensional.

c. UNINFLECTED WORD CLASSES include the adverbs, the prepositions, the various categories of particles (function words), such as the connectives, clause introducers, negatives and others.

2.1.03 Latvian lacks two features that are important in English:

a. There are no articles comparable to **a/an** & **the** in English. In translations the appropriate articles are inserted into the English texts: **Te ir māja. Māja ir liela.** 'Here is a house. The house is large.'

b. Latvian cannot express the difference between a general and an ongoing action. Usually the contexts give the clues for correct English translations: **zēns lasa grāmatas** 'the boy reads books' - general action; but: **zēns lasa grāmatu** 'the boy is reading a book' - ongoing (progressive) action.

2.1.1 THE NOUNS have two genders masculine and feminine.

MASC. nouns:	Jānis	'John'	FEM. nouns:	Anna	'Ann'
	zēns	'boy'		meitene	'girl'
	skolnieks	'boy student'		skolniece	'girl student'
	skolotājs	'male teacher'		skolotāja	'fem. teacher'

Note that the masculine nouns have either the ending -is or -s, the feminine nouns either -a or -e.

2.1.11 The masculine nouns with -s belong to a different declensional stem than the same gender nouns with -is. A similar distinction between the feminine nouns with -a and -e places them also in two different declensional classes.

A declensional stem is a pattern of endings that a noun must take to form its various declensional cases. The endings given above are for the case of the nominative singular.

2.1.12 In the dative singular, the differences in the genders and declensional stems are continued:

MASC.	Jānim	'for John'	FEM.	Annai	'for Ann'
	zēnam	'for the boy'		meitenei	'for the girl'
	skolniekam	'for the boy student'		skolniecei	'for the girl student'
	skolotājam	'for the male teacher'		skolotājai	'for the fem. teacher'

Note that here all the masculine nouns have -m as the last element of the ending. Likewise, all the feminine nouns have -i. These are gender markers.

The vowel before the gender marker is the declensional stem vowel. It appears in the dative sg. ending of all nouns and helps to classify them. In our sample, we have masculine i-stem & a-stem nouns and feminine a-stem & e-stem nouns.

2.1.13 The principal parts of the nouns. Since the dative sg. ending reveals so much essential information, you must memorize every new noun not just by its nominative, but also by the dative form. These two forms are used as the principal parts of the noun. If you know both of them, you can handle correctly all the other endings in the remaining declensional cases.

In your vocabulary, the principal parts of the above nouns will be listed in the following manner:

Jānis, Jānim	'John'	Anna, Annai	'Ann'
zēns, zēnam	'boy'	meitene, meitenei	'girl'
skolnieks, skolniekam	'boy student'	skolniece, skolniecei	'girl student'
skolotājs, skolotājam	'male teacher'	skolotāja, skolotājai	'fem. teacher'

The first entry is the nominative, the second is the dative singular form of each noun.

2.1.2 THE USES OF THE DECLENSIONAL CASES. To indicate the subject, object and other sentence elements, Latvian uses the declensional cases, each marked by their distinctive endings. In this lesson we'll study the main uses of the two cases that are to be learned as the principal parts of the nouns.

2.1.21 THE NOMINATIVE is the who- or what-case. It is used as the sentence subject: Jānis ir zēns. 'J. is a boy.' Zēns un meitene atbild. 'The boy and the girl are answering.' Vai tu esi meitene? 'Are you a girl?' Viņa jautā. 'She asks.'

a. The nominative is also used as a complement after a linking verb: Jānis ir zēns. 'John is a boy.' Vai tu esi meitene? 'Are you a girl?'

2.1.22 THE DATIVE is the to- or for-case. It is used as the indirect object with the verbs that demand it. Here we're using verbs of telling, asking, answering: **Skolotāja jautā zēnam.** 'The teacher is asking the boy.' **Zēns atbild skolotājai.** The boy answers the teacher.' **Viņš saka meitenei.** 'He says to the girl.'

Note that in English you have to use the word order patterns or function words (here a preposition) to indicate the relationships that in Latvian are shown by the means of the case endings.

2.1.23 THE VOCATIVE is the direct address case. It has distinctive forms only in the singular. The vocative forms are made by chopping of the last element of the nominative:

NOM.		VOC.	NOM.		VOC.
Jānis	---	**Jāni!**	**Anna**	---	**Ann!**
zēns	---	**zēn!**	**meitene**	--	**meiten!**
skolotājs	-	**skolotāj!**	**skolotāja**	-	**skolotāj!**

When a female person must be addressed, the use of the special vocative form is optional. The nominative ending is usually dropped when the fem. noun has three or more syllables; two syllable words more often remain unchanged.

With the masculine names there is no option: when a male person is addressed, his name (or reference noun) must be in the vocative form. It sounds very strange when this rule is not followed.

2.1.3 THE PRONOUNS replace nouns, modify nouns, and introduce certain questions. In this lesson we have the pronouns of the first and the last types.

2.1.31 THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS used here are:

es 'I', **man** 'to/for me'; **viņš** 'he', **viņam** 'to/for him';
tu 'thou', **tev** 'to/for thee'; **viņa** 'she', **viņai** 'to/for her'.

The 2nd person pronoun tu/tev refers to one person only (as did the now defunct English pronoun thou/thee). We'll translate it as 'you' -- keeping in mind, though, that it is "**you-one**".

The 3rd person pronouns show the gender distinction; the 1st & 2nd pers. pronouns do not.

2.1.32 THE QUESTION INTRODUCER PRONOUN in this lesson is **kas**? 'who? or 'what?'; **kam**? 'to/for whom?' or 'to/for what?'; **ko**? 'whom?' or 'what?' The last is the accusative (direct object) case form.

2.1.4 **THE VERBS** also use inflections (endings) to mark the person, number, tense and other aspects. The interchanges of the verbal endings are called conjugation.

2.1.41 THE CONJUGATION OF THE VERB **būt** 'BE' AND **nebūt** 'NOT BE' IN THE PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR:

1st person:	**es esmu**	'I am'	**es neesmu**	'I am not'
2nd person:	**tu esi**	'you (one) are'	**tu neesi**	'you (one) are not'
3rd person:	**viņš/viņa ir**	'he/she is'	**viņš/viņa nav**	'he/she is not'

This verb is called irregular because of the different shapes of the 3rd. person form and the insertion of **-m-** in the 1st person.

2.1.42 The 3rd person verb, instead of having **viņš** or **viņa**, may go with any subject, except **es**, **tu** and the plural counterparts of these two.

2.1.43 The same 3rd person form is used also with all the plural subjects. This is true of all Latvian verbs. For these reasons, the third person is called "the third common person".

2.1.5 SENTENCE STRUCTURES. In Latvian there are three basic sentence structures: the linking verb (descriptive) sentences, the active verb sentences and the dative subject sentences. This lesson makes use of the first two of them.

2.1.51 LINKING VERB SENTENCES used here rename the subject by a noun, which is called predicate noun. Like the subject itself, it is in the nominative case: **Jānis ir zēns.** John is a boy.
Viņa būs skolotāja. She will be a teacher.

2.1.52 ACTIVE VERB SENTENCES have certain variations:
a. They may have only a subject and a verb:
Skolotāja jautā. The teacher asks.
Jānis atbild. John answers.
b. They may add an indirect object in the dative case:
Skolotāja jautā Jānim. The teacher asks John.
Jānis atbild skolotājai. John answers the teacher.
c. For now our direct objects are the whole questions and answers (underlined):
Skolotāja jautā Jānim: "Kas tu esi?" The teacher asks John, "Who are you?"
Jānis atbild: "Es esmu zēns." John answers, "I am a boy."
NOTE: Single noun (pronoun) direct objects must take the accusative case, which we'll study later.

2.1.6 QUESTIONS. All the above sentence structures can be remade into questions. There are two types of question sentences: Vai-questions and K-questions.

2.1.61 VAI-QUESTIONS are also called "yes/no questions" because they demand an affirmative or negative answer. In Latvian no verb-subject inversion or any other structure change takes place: to form this type of question, the particle Vai is placed before a sentence expressing a statement:

STATEMENT		QUESTION	
Jānis ir zēns.	John is a boy.	**Vai Jānis ir zēns?**	Is John a boy?
Skolotāja jautā.	The teacher asks.	**Vai skolotāja jautā?**	Does the t. ask?
Viņa jautā Jānim.	She asks John.	**Vai viņa jautā Jānim?**	Does she ask John?

Note that these questions can be answered by either "yes" or "no".

2.1.62 K-QUESTIONS in Latvian correspond to the Wh-questions in English. They are introduced by a question word beginning with K-, and they ask for a particular sentence element in the answer:
a. K-word asks for the subject in the answer:
Kas jautā? Who asks? (ANS: **Skolotāja jautā.** The teacher asks.)
Kas ir zēns? Who is a boy? (ANS: **Jānis ir zēns.** John is a boy.)
b. K-word asks for the predicate noun in the answer:
Kas ir Jānis? Who is John? (ANS: **Jānis ir zēns.** J. is a boy.)
c. K-word asks for the indirect object in the answer:
Kam skolotāja jautā? Whom does the teacher ask? (ANS: **Skolotāja jautā Jānim.** The teacher asks John.)
d. K-word asks for the direct object in the answer:
Ko skolotāja jautā Jānim? What does the teacher ask John? (ANS: **Skolotāja jautā Jānim: "Kas tu esi?"** - see 2.1.42c above)
e. K-phrase asks for the verb in the answer:
Ko dara skolotāja? What does the teacher do? (ANS: **Skolotāja jautā.** The teacher asks.)

2.1.7 VERB-OBJECT INVERSION. A pronoun object usually comes before the verb: **Skolotāja viņam jautā.** The teacher asks him. (BUT: **Skolotāja jautā Jānim.** The teacher asks John.)

2.1 READING KAS TU ESI?

1. Te ir Jānis. Jānis ir zēns. Viņš ir skolnieks.

Linking-verb sentences begin.

Note the masculine endings.

2. Te ir Anna. Anna ir meitene. Viņa ir skolniece.

Note the feminine endings.

3. Te ir skolotāja. Skolotāja jautā. Zēns un meitene atbild.

Action-verb sentences begin (repeated below with indirect objects).

4. Skolotāja jautā Jānim: "Jāni, kas tu esi?"

Jāni - a vocative (direct address) form.
K-questions begin.

5. Jānis atbild skolotājai: "Es esmu zēns."

viņam jautā (not jautā viņam): The pronoun object comes before the verb.

6. Atkal skolotāja viņam jautā: "Vai tu esi skolnieks?"

Vai tu esi...? 'Are you...?'
(Vai introduces a yes/no question.)

7. Jānis viņai atbild: "Jā, es esmu skolnieks."

8. Tagad skolotāja jautā Annai: "Nu, Anna, vai tu arī esi skolnieks?"

Nu, Anna 'Well, Ann'

9. Anna atbild: "Nē, es neesmu skolnieks. Es esmu skolniece. Skolnieks ir zēns. Meitene ir skolniece. Es esmu meitene, ne zēns."

Note here the gender distinctions being made with the endings.

ne zēns 'not a boy'

10. Nu skolotāja viņai jautā: "Vai Jānis ir skolnieks?"

11. Anna tagad atbild: "Jā, viņš ir skolnieks. Jānis ir skolnieks, bet es esmu skolniece."

bet connects 2 statements forming a compound sentence.

12. Jānis saka Annai: "Es esmu skolnieks, bet tu esi skolniece."

13. Anna saka Jānim: "Es esmu meitene, bet tu esi zēns."

saka Jānim 'says to John'

14. Viņa ir meitene un skolniece, bet viņš ir zēns un skolnieks.

* *

15. Ko skolotāja dara šodien? Viņa jautā. Ko viņa darīja vakar? Viņa jautāja. Kam viņa jautāja? Viņa jautāja zēnam. Ko darīja zēns? Zēns viņai atbildēja.

ko skolotāja dara? 'what is the teacher doing?'

darīja, jautāja - the past tense forms introduced

kam 'whom'

16. Kas vēl atbildēja skolotājai? Viņai atbildēja arī meitene. Ko meitene viņai atbildēja? Meitene atbildēja: "Es esmu meitene." Ko vēl meitene sacīja? Viņa vēl sacīja: "Es esmu arī skolniece."

kas vēl 'who else'

Viņai atbildēja arī meitene. The subject placed after the verb for emphasis. Translate: 'The girl also answered her' - in the normal order.

ko vēl 'what else'

vēl sacīja 'said in addition'

17. Vai skolotāja jautās arī rīt? Jā, viņa jautās. Kam viņa jautās? Viņa jautās zēnam un meitenei. Ko skolotāja jautās zēnam? Varbūt viņa jautās: "Vai tu esi skolniece?" Ko zēns atbildēs? Tad zēns viņai sacīs: "Nē, es neesmu skolniece, bet skolnieks." Meitene skolotājai sacīs: "Skolniece esmu es, bet zēns ir skolnieks."

jautās - the future tense forms introduced

Skolniece esmu es. A reversal for emphasis. Translate: 'It is I who am a girl student.'

18. Vai rīt zēns vairs nebūs skolnieks? Zēns bija skolnieks vakar, ir skolnieks šodien un būs skolnieks rīt. Tāpat meitene ir, bija un būs skolniece. Skolotāja viņai jautās, un viņa skolotājai atbildēs.

19. **Vai tu esi skolnieks, vai skolniece? Es** neesmu **ne skolnieks,** ne **skolniece; es esmu skolotājs. Vai zēns un meitene tev atbild? Jā, zēns un meitene man atbild. Kur ir zēns un meitene? Zēns un meitene ir te.**

The 2nd vai means 'or'.

Note a triple negative. Translate: 'I am neither a boy student nor...'

kur ir 'where are'

2.1 VOCABULARY

MASCULINE NOUNS:		FEMININE NOUNS:	
Jānis, Jānim	John	Anna, Annai	Ann
zēns, zēnam	boy	meitene, meitenei	girl
skolnieks, skolniekam	boy student	skolniece, skolniecei	girl student
skolotājs, skolotājam	male teacher	skolotāja, skolotājai	female teacher

PRONOUNS:

es	I	dat. **man**	to/for me	**viņš**	he	dat. **viņam**	to/for him
tu	you-one,	dat. **tev**	to/for you	**viņa**	she,	dat. **viņai**	to/for her

QUESTION INTRODUCERS:

kas?	who? / what? (subject form)	**kam?**	to/for whom? (indirect object)
ko?	whom? / what? (direct object)	**kur?**	where? (location)

Vai - not translated; introduces yes/no-questions

VERBS:

būt: ir (base **es-**), **bija, būs**	I-irreg.	lk: be
nebūt: nav (**ne+es-**), **nebija, nebūs**	I-irreg.	lk: not be
jautāt: jautā, jautāja, jautās	II-ā	tr/itr: ask (questions)
atbildēt: atbild, atbildēja, atbildēs	III-ē	tr/itr: answer
sacīt: saka, sacīja, sacīs	III-ī	tr: say
darīt: dara, darīja, darīs	III-ī	tr: do

ADVERBS:

				tāpat	likewise, in the same way
te	here	**šodien**	today	**arī**	also, too
tagad	now	**vakar**	yesterday	**atkal**	again
nu	now	**rīt**	tomorrow	**vēl**	in addition, more; else (w. qu. words)
tad	then	**varbūt**	maybe	**vairs**	(not) any more (w. negatives)

FUNCTION WORDS:

un	conj: and	**jā**	part: yes	**nu**	part: well (introductory)
bet	conj: but	**nē**	part: no	**ne** ___, **ne** ___	conj: neither ___ nor ___
vai	conj: or	**ne**	part: not		

Note that **vai** and **nu** have two different functions.

ABBREVIATIONS W. VERBS: **lk**: "linking", **tr**: "transitive", **itr**: "intransitive".
OTHER ABBREVIATIONS: **conj**: "conjunction", **part**: "particle".

ADDITIONAL SIGNS: ^ "broken pitch", **ę/ę̄** "broad e/ē"; not used in the conventional spelling.

SUPPLEMENTS

Every unit will have supplementary word lists. Such lists will serve various purposes: to collect all or most (important) words in connection with certain topics or grammatical categories and to give additional material for exercises and vocabulary expansion. How any of the lists should be used is left up to the teacher.

S-2.1 OCCUPATIONS, PROFESSIONS, POSITIONS

The list contains only the most frquently used words. The second form of every entry is the feminine nominative singular. Note these correspondences between the masculine and feminine suffixes:

m. -ants,	f. -ante	m. -is	f. -e	m. -nieks, f. -niece
m. -ārs,	f. -āre	m. -ieris,	f. -iere	m. -noms, f. -nome
m. -āts,	f. -āte	m. -iķis,	f. -iķe	m.-(t)ors, f.-(t)ore
m. -ents,	f. -ente	m. -ists,	f. -iste	m. -tājs, f. -tāja
m. -ējs,	f. -ēja	m. -logs,	f. -loģe	

administrātors, -tore	administrator	dzērājs, -āja	drunk
admirālis, (admirāle?)	admiral	dziedātājs, -tāja	singer
advokāts, advokāte	lawyer, attorney	ekonomists, -miste	economist
agronoms, agronome	agronomist	ekonoms, -nome	steward
aģents, aģente	agent	fanātiķis, -tiķe	fanatic
aktieris, aktrise	actor, actress	filologs, -loģe	philologist
amatieris, -iere	amateur	filozofs, -zofe	philosopher
amatnieks, -niece	tradesman	fiziķis, fiziķe	physicist
aptiekārs, -kāre	druggist	fotografs, -grafe	photographer
archeologs, -loģe	archeologist	frizieris, -ziere	barber, stylist
architekts, -tekte	architect	galdnieks, (-ce?)	carpenter
ārsts, ārste	physician, MD	garīdznieks, -ce	clergyman, -woman
asistents, -tente	assistant	gleznotājs, -tāja	painter, artist
astronoms, -nome	astronomer	grāmatvedis, -de	bookkeeper
autors, autore	author	gubernātors, -re	governor
baņķieris, -iere	banker	ģografs, -grafe	geographer
bibliotēkārs, -kāre	librarian	ģeologs, ģeoloģe	geologist
biologs, bioloģe	biologist	ierēdnis, -dne	clerk, bureaucrat
ceļinieks, -niece	wayfarer	inspektors, -trise	inspector
ceļotājs, -tāja	traveller	inženieris, -iere	engineer
darbinieks, -niece	employee, clerk	īpašnieks, -niece	owner
dārznieks, -niece	gardener	izdevējs, izdevēja	publisher
dejotājs, -tāja	dancer	izgudrotājs, -tāja	inventor
detektīvs, (-tīve?)	detective	kalējs, (kalēja?)	smith
diktātors, -tore	dictator	kareivis/karavīrs	soldier
diktors, diktore	announcer	klaidonis, -done	tramp
direktors, -trise	director	komandieris, -re	commander
diriģents, -ģente	conductor	komponists, -niste	composer
docents, docente	assistant prof.	korespondents, -te	correspondent
doktors, doktore	doctor	krāsotājs, -tāja	painter, dyer
drēbnieks	tailor	kritiķis, kritiķe	critic
dzejnieks, -niece	poet, poetess	krodz(i)nieks, -ce	bartender

kurpnieks, (-ce?)	shoemaker
ķīmiķis, ķīmiķe	chemist
labotājs, -tāja	repairer
lektors, lektore	lecturer
lidotājs, -tāja	flier
lingvists, -ste	linguist
māceklis, -kle	apprentice
mācītājs, -tāja	pastor
maiznieks, -ce	baker
mākslinieks, -ce	artist
mašīnists, -iste	engine tender
matēmatiķis, -ķe	mathematician
mechaniķis, -ķe	mechanic
medicīnas māsa	trained nurse
misionārs, -nāre	missionary
mūzikants, -ante	music amateur
mūziķis, mūziķe	art musician
palīgs, palīdze	helper, aide
pārdevējs, -ēja	sales clerk
pārstāvis, -āve	representative
pārvaldnieks,-ce	manager
pavārs	cook (male)
pensionārs, -re	pensioner
pilsētas galva	city mayor
pilsonis, -sone	citizen
policists, -ste	police officer
politiķis, -iķe	politician
prezidents, -te	president
priekšnieks, -ce	superior, chief
priesteris	priest
profesors, -ore	professor
prokurors, -ore	public prosecutor
psīchologs, -ģe	psychologist
rakstnieks, -ce	writer
redaktors,-trise	editor
rektors, rektore	rector
revolūcionārs,-e	revolutionary
režisors, -sore	play producer
rūpnieks, (-ce?)	industrialist
sargs	guard
saimnieks, -ce	landlord
sekretārs, -āre	secretary
senātors, -tore	senator
skolotājs, -āja	teacher
sociologs, -ģe	sociologist
spiegs, spiedze	spy
sportists, -ste	athlete
strādnieks, -ce	laborer, worker
students, -ente	college student
sūtnis, sūtne	ambassador, envoy
šoferis, -fere	chauffeur, driver
šuvēja	seamstress
tiesnesis, -se	judge
tirgotājs, -āja	merchant, trader
trenieris, -niere	trainer
tulks, tulce	interpreter
tūrists, tūriste	tourist
ugunsdzēsējs	fireman
uzņēmējs, (-ēja?)	contractor
vadītājs, -tāja	manager; leader
vadonis, vadone	leader, chief
varonis, varone	hero, heroine
valstsvīrs	statesman
veikalnieks, -ce	businessman, -woman
veikalvedis, -de	shop manager
vēsturnieks, -ce	historian
veterinārs, -āre	veterinary
viesmīlis	waiter
virēja	fem. cook
zemkopis, zemkope	landtiller
zemnieks, -niece	farmer, farmwoman
zemturis, -ture	landowner
zinātnieks, -ce	scientist
zobārsts, -ārste	dentist
zvejnieks, -niece	fisherman, -woman
žurnālists, -ste	journalist

* Now in Latvia oficiants, oficiante for 'waiter, waitress' are being used.

2.11 NOBILITY TITLES

valdnieks, -niece	ruler
ķeizars, -riene	emperor, empress
karalis, -liene	king, queen
princis, princese	prince, princess
hercogs, -giene	duke, duchess
lielhercogs, -ne	grand duke, -chess
grāfs, grāfiene	count, countess
marķīzs, marķīze	marquis, marchioness
barons, baronese	baron, baroness
kungs, kundze	lord, lady
dižciltīgais, -gā	nobleman, -woman
virsaitis	tribal chief
ķēniņš, ķēniņiene	king, queen (in fairy tales)

2.12 MILITARY RANKS

dižkareivis	private 1st class
kaprālis	corporal
seržants	sergeant
leitnants	lieutenant
kapteinis	captain
majors	major
pulkvedis	colonel
ģenerālis	general

WORD CARDS

Beginning with this lesson, you should be preparing word cards for all the given vocabulary entries. Word cards are useful not only for memorization and vocabulary reviews, but also for building all kinds of temporary lists along the categories of words being studied.

TO MAKE WORD CARDS, cut lengthwise the commercially available 3x5 inch cards once, or 4x6 inch cards twice, and keep them together with a rubber band. You may use, if you prefer, the whole 3x5 cards and store them in boxes, but they'll be clumsier to handle.

TO WRITE WORD CARDS: a. COPY THE PRINCIPAL PARTS IN THEIR ENTIRETY. Because of the limited space, they sometimes may be abbreviated on the vocabulary page. Vocabulary page may give: YOU WRITE ON YOUR CARD:

atbildēt: atbild, -dēja, -dēs	atbildēt: atbild, atbildēja, atbildēs
skolotājs, -jam	skolotājs, skolotājam
pęlēks, -ka	pęlēks, pęlēka

(In the early lessons there are few or no abbreviations of the shown kind, but they increase later on.)

b. ADD THE GRAMMATICAL IDENTIFICATION of the entry, such as "adv." for an adverb, "pr." for a pronoun, "conj." for a conjuction, etc. (or you may write out the complete words). The verbs are identified to their subcategories, such as "I-k/c","II-ā","III-ē", etc., which will become meaningful later. Identify the nouns by their gender as "M." for masculine and "F." for feminine. Your teacher can add to this the information as to what declension each noun belongs and label them "Mi" = 'masc. noun of i-stem declension', "Fe" = 'feminine noun of e-stem declension', etc. (You can find these labels in the vocabularies at the end of the book.)

c. THE ENGLISH MEANING should be written on the other side of the card.

TO CLASSIFY WORD CARDS, follow your teacher's directions. It is advisable to keep separate files for each of the words classes (parts of speech) -- verbs, nouns, pronouns, etc. Make each file alphabetical.
Later on when the volume of each file has grown, you may want to make separate files for each verb conjugation, for each noun gender and -- still later -- for each declensional stem.

TO COLOR-CODE WORD CARDS is, of course, an optional undertaking, but it has been done in this course with commercially available colored cards. Traditionally these colors have been given to the following word classes:
WHITE for the NOUNS,
YELLOW for the ADJECTIVES,
ORANGE for the PRONOUNS and NUMERALS,
GREEN for the VERBS,
BLUE for the ADVERBS,
PINK for the remainder of PARTICLES (conjunctions, clause introducers, prepositions, etc.)

Make cards only for those items in the SUPPLEMENT LISTS that your teacher wants you to make.

IV. LESSON 2.2

RULES FOR MAKING THE PLURAL FORMS, NOMINATIVE & DATIVE, OF NOUNS AND REGULAR PRONOUNS
NOMINATIVE AND DATIVE PLURAL FORMS OF IRREGULAR PRONOUNS

AGREEMENT IN NUMBER, GENDER & CASE AMONG THE NOUNS AND THEIR MODIFIERS / REPLACERS
CHANGING THE WORD ORDER FOR EMPHASIS

VOCABULARY: ADDITIONAL PERSONAL NAMES
ADDITIONAL TERMS OF SOCIAL RELATIONSHIPS
ADDITIONAL PRONOUNS USED WITH PERSONS
CARDINAL NUMBERS 1 TO 10

SUPPLEMENT: KINSHIP AND AGE TERMS

2.2 GRAMMAR:

2.2.1 MAKING OF PLURALS. With this lesson we ar beginning to make (derive) new declensional case forms from the already given principal parts. We will do this with the nouns and regular pronouns.

2.2.11 NOUN DECLENSIONAL STEMS. We have had (so far) four different patterns of inflections that get attached to the noun bases

MASC. a-stem pattern: **zẹ̄ns**, zẹ̄nam FEM. a-stem pattern: **māsa**, māsai
" i-stem " **brāḷis**, brāḷīm " e-stem " **meitene**, meitenei

THE VOWEL THAT APPEARS IN ALL DATIVE ENDINGS IS CALLED THE DECLENSIONAL STEM VOWEL. The nouns get labelled according to their stem vowels. Thus **zẹ̄ns**, **zẹ̄nam** is classified as a masculine a-stem noun, and meitene, meitenei as a feminine e-stem noun. The stem identification has the utmost importance in making other case forms from the principal parts of the nouns. You'll see this right away in the processes explained below.

2.2.12 THE NOMINATIVE PLURALS OF THE FEMININE NOUNS are made by adding -s to the stem vowel: **māsa** 'sister' → pl. māsas 'sisters'; **meitene** 'girl' → pl. meitenes 'girls'.

2.2.13 THE DATIVE PLURALS OF THE FEMININE NOUNS are made by adding -m to the lengthened stem vowel: **māsa** → dat.pl. **māsām** 'to/for sisters'; **meitene** → dat.pl. **meitenēm** 'to/for girls'. Note that in the dat.pl. forms before the -m -a- lengthens to -ā- and -e- to -ē-.

2.2.14 THE NOMINATIVE PLURALS OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS are made by adding -i to the noun base, i.e. by replacing the principal parts suffixes with -i. There are two ways how this is done:

a. The a-stem nouns replace the suffixes in a straightforward fashion:
zẹ̄ns (**zẹ̄nam**) 'boy' → pl. zẹ̄ni 'boys'.

b. The i-stem nouns, along with the ending replacement, receive a base-end palatalization, through which -l- becomes -ḷ- (-s- → -š-, -c- → -č-, etc.)
So far we have only this i-stem noun: **brālis** (**brālim**) 'brother' -- pl. brāḷi 'brothers'.

2.2.15 THE DATIVE PLURALS OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS are made by adding -iem to the noun base. Again, the i-stem nouns receive a base-end palatalization: **zẹ̄nam** 'to/for boy' → pl. zẹ̄niem 'to/for boys'; **brālim** 'to/for brother' → plur. brāḷiem 'to/for brothers'.

2.2.16 THE REGULAR PRONOUNS & NUMERALS HAVE THE SAME SHAPES AS THE a-STEM NOUNS. They make their plural forms in the patterns described above.

a. The feminine (a-stem) pattern: viņa 'she' -->pl. viņas 'they-fem.'; viņai 'to /for her' -->pl. viņām 'to/for them-fem.' And similarly visas 'all-fem.' -->dat. pl. visām 'to/for all-fem.'; divas 'two-fem.' -->dat.pl. divām 'two/for two-f.' etc. See 2.2.12 & .13 above.

b. The masculine (a-stem) pattern: viņš 'he' -->pl. viņi 'they-masc.'; viņam 'to /for him' -->pl. viņiem 'to/for them-masc.'; And similarly visi 'all-masc.', dat.pl. visiem 'to/for all-m.'; divi 'two-m.', dat. diviem 'to/for two-m.', etc. See 2.2.14 & .15 above.

c. The nominative plural form trīs '3' has no gender marker and is used with nouns of both genders: trīs zēni '3 boys', trīs meitenes '3 girls'. The dative forms are: trijiem 'to/for 3-masc.', trijām 'to/for 3-fem.' There is also the dative form trim that can be used with both genders.

2.2.17 THE 1ST & 2ND PERSON PRONOUNS have the plural shapes of their own; hence, they must be considered not regular, and all their forms should be learned by heart. See their nominative and dative (plural) forms in the vocabulary.

2.2.18 ADDITIONAL NOTES:

a. In plural, the nominative forms are used for a direct address (there are no special vocative plural forms): Labrīt, zēni un meitenes! 'Good morning, boys and girls!'

b. The question words kas?, kam?, ko? (like English who?, whom?, what?) remain the same also in the plural contexts: Kas ir zēni? 'Who are the boys?'

c. The principal parts of the regular pronouns and numerals are their nominative singular forms, both masculine and feminine: viņš, viņa 'he, she'; viens, viena 'one'; otrs, otra 'other', etc.
Words not used in the singular are en ered with the corresponding plural forms as their principal parts: divi, divas 'two'; abi, abas 'both'; pieci, piecas 'five', etc.

d. The word draugs 'friend' must be pronounced [drauks]. The ending -s makes the adjoining -g- sound like [k]. Before a vowel the [g] stays: draugam.

2.2.2 AGREEMENT OF THE MODIFIERS WITH THEIR NOUNS in the number, gender and case is an important feature of the Latvian phrase structure. It stems from the fact that not only the nouns, but also the pronouns, numerals and adjectives have the declensional suffixes. Note how this agreement works with [NOUN + NUMERAL]:

viens zēns '1 boy', divi zēni '2 boys'; vienam zēnam 'for 1 boy', diviem zēniem 'for 2 boys';
viena māsa '1 sister'; divas māsas '2 sisters'; vienai māsai 'for 1 sister', divām māsām 'for 2 sisters'.

In this sample both nouns are a-stem, and for this reason the agreement of the declensional suffixes in every phrase was exact even phonologically.

2.2.21 However, NOT ALL NOUNS ARE OF THE a-STEM PATTERN. You must always remember that it is the function of the declensional suffix, not its exact shape, that matters in this type of agreement. Each noun follows its own declensional pattern, but the modifier stays in the a-stem pattern with any type of noun.

viens brālis '1 brother', divi brāļi '2 brothers'; vienam brālim 'for 1 brother', diviem brāļiem 'for 2 brothers';
viena meitene '1 girl', divas meitenes '2 girls'; vienai meitenei 'for 1 girl', divām meitenēm 'for 2 girls'.

a. The same principles hold when a noun has more than one modifier: abi mani draugi 'both my friends', visas septiņas meitenes 'all 7 girls', tavai vienai māsai 'for your one sister', etc.

2.2.22 WHEN A NOUN GETS REPLACED WITH A REGULAR PRONOUN, the latter must take on the same number gender and case that the noun would have had:
Skolotāja jautā. - Viņa jautā. 'The fem.teacher asks. - She asks.'
Jānis atbild. - **Viņš atbild.** 'John answers. - He answers.'
Ko Jānis saka abām meitenēm? - Jānis viņām saka utt. 'What is John saying to both girls? - John is saying to them, etc.'

2.2.23 **'COMMON GENDER' RULES.** When a pronoun reference is made to both genders collectively, the masculine forms are used to indicate a common gender: **Te ir zēns un meitene. Viņi abi atbild skolotājai.** 'Here are a boy and a girl. They both are answering the teacher.'

2.2.3 THE SENTENCE STRESS USED FOR EMPHASIS. The main stress lies on the final word of the Latvian sentence. This is the reason why the pronouns and other weakly stressed words avoid the final position. Thus the correct word order is to place the pronoun object before, not after the verb: **Zēns man atbild.** 'The boy is answering me.'

2.2.31 The pronoun may, however, be placed in the final position, but then it must be done deliberately for emphasis: **Zēns atbild man.** In this version the pronoun receives the main stress, and the sentence must now be translated as 'It is to me that the boy is answering'.

2.2.32 Since in Latvian the declensional suffixes, not the word order, indicate the syntactic functions, even the sentence subject can be placed in the final position: **Man atbild zēns** Again, this is an emphatic use of the subject, and now the sentence reads: 'It is the boy who is answering me'.

2.2.4 **COMPOSITE SENTENCES.** The sentences that have just one subject-verb sequence are called simple sentences. When the contents of two simple sentences are somehow related, the two simple sentences can be joined into a single compound sentence. The compounding is often aided by the connectives, such as un 'and', bet 'but' and others. 2 SIMPLE S: Tu esi mans brālis. Es esmu tava māsa.
INTO ONE COMPOUND S: Tu esi mans brālis, un es esmu tava māsa. 'You are my brother, and I am your sister.'

2.2.5 CONJUGATION CONTINUED IN PLURAL. In the previous lesson (see GR. 2.1.41) we learned the singular forms of the verbs **būt** & **nebūt**:

	1st sg. . . .	es	**ęsmu, neęsmu**	I am, am not
	2nd sg. . . .	tu	**esi, neesi**	you-sg. are, are not (normal -e-!)
	3rd sg.	viņš/viņa	ir, nav	he/she is. is not
NOW WE CONTINUE:	1st pl. . . .	mēs	**ęsam, neęsam**	we are, are not
	2nd pl. . . .	jūs	**ęsat, neęsat**	you-pl. are, are not
	3rd pl.	viņi/viņas	ir, nav	they are, are not

2.2.51 NOTE THAT THE THIRD PERSON HAS THE SAME FORMS IN SINGULAR & PLURAL. This is true of all Latvian verbs in all tenses and conjugations. For this reason we will call the 3rd verb person "THE THIRD COMMON PERSON" and enter it in our conjugation tables only once:

1st sg. ęsmu,	neęsmu
2nd sg. **esi**,	**neesi**
3rd co. ir,	nav
1st pl. ęsam,	neęsam
2nd pl. **ęsat**,	**neęsat**

In the future, this will be the sequence of verb persons in all our conjugation tables.

2.2.6 PREFIXED VERBS make their 1st appearance: aiziet 'go away' and atnākt 'come hither'. Litterally they mean "awaygo" and "hithercome" -- formations known in English in a few native verbs like outdo or undergo, and many borrowings from Latin: conform, inform, reform, perform; discount, recount, etc.

R-2.2 R E A D I N G

SKOLNIEKI UN SKOLNIECES

1. Jānis, Juris, Andris, Aivars, Ivars un Alberts ir zēni. Te ir sešī zēni. Viņi ir skolnieki.

2. Anna, Anita, Ilga, Ilze, Kristīne un Ingrīda ir meitenes. Te ir sešas meitenes. Viņas ir skolnieces.

3. Te ir skolnieki un skolnieces, skolotāji un skolotājas.

4. Skolotājs jautā sešiem zēniem: "Kas jūs esat?"

5. Visi sešī zēni skolotājam atbild: "Mēs esam zēni."

6. Atkal skolotājs viņiem jautā: "Vai jūs arī esat skolnieki?"

7. Nu zēni viņam atbild: "Jā, mēs visi esam arī skolnieki."

8. Tagad skolotājs jautā visām sešām meitenēm: "Kas esat jūs?"

9. "Mēs visas esam meitenes un skolnieces," viņas atbild skolotājam.

10. Jānis un Anna ir brālis un māsa. Viņi stāsta skolotājam, skolniekiem un skolniecēm: "Mēs esam brālis un māsa."

11. Jānis saka Annai: "Es esmu tavs brālis, un tu esi mana māsa."

sešī zēni: agreement in the nominative plural betw. a masculine noun and its modifier

sešas meitenes: the same agreement with a feminine noun

sešiem zēniem: the same agreement in the dative plural, masc. gender

viņiem jautā: the pronoun object comes before the verb, unless deliberately emphasized
viņam atbild: the same kind of occurrence
mēs visi 'all of us'

visām sešām meitenēm: agreement in the dative plural feminine gender
jūs is here in an emphatic position
mēs visas: note the gender change depending on the speaker

viņi: the masc. is used here as a common gender form

tavs is pronounced [taus] because no vowel follows the -v-.

12. Anna tāpat saka Jānim: "Es esmu tava māsa, un tu esi mans brālis."

Compare mans/mana & tavs/tava agreement with their nouns in this and the preceding paragraph.

13. Aivars un Ivars saka: "Mēs abi esam brāļi."

mēs abi / mēs abas: similar to mēs visi/visas on the preceding page

14. Ilga un Ilze saka: "Mēs abas esam māsas."

15. Māsas jautā Ingrīdai un Kristīnei: "Ingrīd(a) un Kristīn(e), vai jūs abas arī esat māsas?"

Ingrīd/Ingrīda! & Kristīn/Kristīne! - The dropping of the fem. ending in the direct address is optional. (See Gr-2.1.23)

16. Ingrīda un Kristīne atbild abām māsām: "Nē, Ilga un Ilze, mēs neesam māsas. Mēs esam divas draudzenes. Mēs neesam māsas, bet mēs esam draudzenes."

Ilga un Ilze: another vocative, but the two-syllabic fem. forms stay (usually) unchanged.

17. Viena meitene stāsta: "Kristīne ir mana draudzene. Kristīn, vai es esmu tava draudzene?"

18. Otra meitene viņai atbild: "Jā, Ingrīd, tu esi mana draudzene, un es esmu tava draudzene."

19. Visas meitenes viņām saka: "Jūs esat divas draudzenes. Jūs esat draudzenes viena otrai."

viena otrai 'to one another'

20. Aivars un Ivars jautā Andrim un Albertam: "Andri un Albert, vai jūs abi arī esat brāļi?"

Andri un Albert, Ivar un Aivar (below): masc. sg. names drop -s in the direct address (see Gr-2.1.23).

21. Alberts un Andris atbild abiem brāļiem: "Nē, Ivar un Aivar, mēs neesam brāļi, bet mēs esam divi draugi."

22. Viens zēns stāsta: "Te ir Alberts. Viņš ir mans draugs. Albert, vai es esmu tavs draugs?"

draugs is pronounced [drauks] due to the voiceless [s] following it

23. Otrs zēns viņam atbild: "Jā, Andri, tu esi mans draugs. Mēs esam draugi viens otram.

* * *

24. Ko skolotājs sacīja bērniem? Skolotājs viņiem sacīja: "Labrīt, bērni!" Ko bērni tad sacīja viņam? Arī bērni tāpat atbildēja skolotājam: "Labrīt, skolotāj!"

The PAST TENSE 3rd person forms are being exercised here. Find these forms among the principal parts of the verbs.

25. Te bija sešas vai septiņas meitenes. Ko viņas visas te darīja? Viņas viena otrai jautāja un atbildēja. Ko sacīja Ilga un Ilze? Viņas sacīja: "Mēs esam māsas." Vai arī Ingrīda un Kristīne bija māsas? Nē, viņas stāstīja: "Mēs abas neesam māsas." Ko vēl viņas sacīja? Viņas vēl sacīja: "Mēs esam divas draudzenes."

vai: here it means 'or'

ko vēl 'what else'

vēl sacīja 'said in addition'

26. Vakar skolotājs jautāja tev un man, jums un mums. Viņš jautāja mums visiem. Kas viņam atbildēja? Četri zēni un piecas meitenes viņam atbildēja. Ko viņi skolotājam sacīja? Visi bērni viņam stāstīja: "Mēs esam skolnieki un skolnieces."

27. Te bija tikai piecas skolnieces. Tad atnāca vēl trīs skolnieces Nu te bija jau astoņas skolnieces. Te bija arī deviņi skolnieki, bet sēši skolnieki drīz aizgāja.

vēl trīs 'three more'

Te palika tikai trīs skolnieki. Tad aizgāja vēl divi skolnieki un sešas vai septiņas skolnieces. Nu te palika tikai viens skolnieks un viena vai divas skolnieces.

28. Arī rīt te atnāks visi skolnieki un skolnieces. Tad atnāks arī skolotājs. Bērni viņam sacīs: "Labrīt!" Viņš bērniem atbildēs tāpat. Drīz viņi visi viens otram jautās, atbildēs un stāstīs. Tad viņi atkal aizies. Ne zēni, ne meitenes nepaliks te. Vai tikai skolotājs vēl būs te? Kam viņš jautās tad, un kas viņam atbildēs?

The FUTURE TENSE 3rd person forms are being exercised here. (Check the last principal part of all your verbs.)

vēl būs 'will still be'

jautās tad: the adverb here is in an emphatic position

2.2 VOCABULARY

MASC. NAMES:
Aivars, Aivaram
Ivars, Ivaram
Albērts, Albērtam
Andris, Andrim
Juris, Jurim

FEM. NAMES:
Anita, Anitai
Ingrīda, Ingrīdai
Ilga, Ilgai
Ilze, Ilzei
Kristīne, Kristīnei

N O U N S - m a s c:
brālis, brālim brother
draugs, draugam friend (male)
bērns, bērnam child

N O U N S - f e m:
māsa, māsai sister
draudzene, draudzenei friend (fem.)

P R O N O U N S:
mans, f. **mana** my, mine
tavs, f. **tava** your-sg. (thy/thine)
otrs, f. **otra** other, another

mēs we **mums** to/for us
jūs you-pl. **jums** to/for you-pl.
abi, f. **abas** both
visi, f. **visas** all; everybody

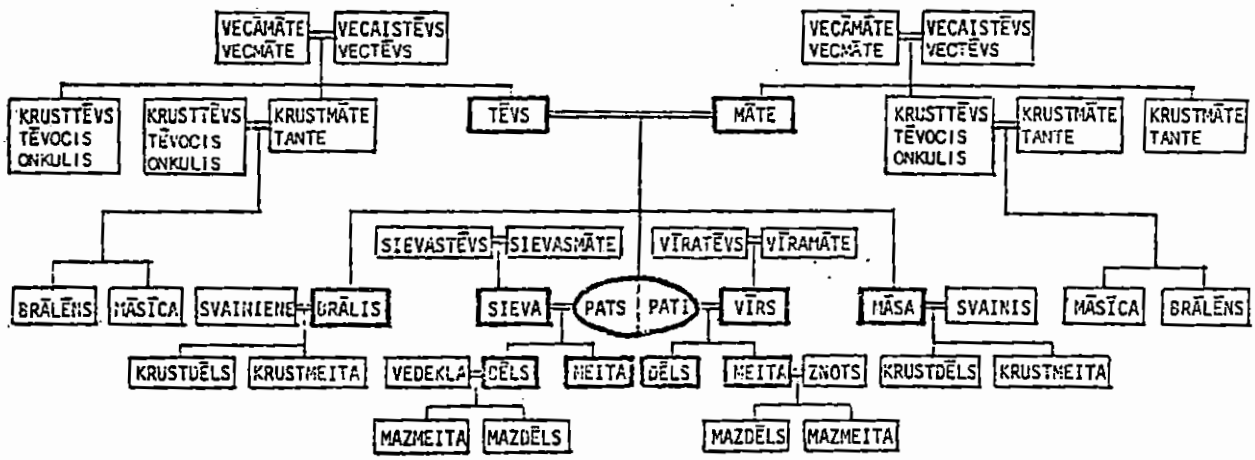
N U M E R A L S:
viens, f. **viena** one
divi, f. **divas** two
trīs (com. gend.) three
četri, f. **četras** four
pieci, f. **piecas** five
sešī, f. **sešas**
septiņi, f. **septiņas** seven
astoņi, f. **astoņas** eight
deviņi, f. **deviņas** nine
desmit (no gender) ten

V E R B S:

iêt: iêt (base **ej-**), **gāja, iês**	I-irreg.	itr: walk, go; **aiziet, etc.** go away
nākt: nāk, nāca, nāks	I-k/c	itr: come; **atnākt, etc.** come here
palikt: paliek, palika, paliks	I-k/c	itr: stay, remain
stāstīt: stāsta, stāstīja, stāstīs	III-ī	tr/itr: tell, narrate

ADVERBS: **drīz** soon **jau** already **tikai** only

S-2.2 KINSHIP AND AGE TERMS



atraitnis, -im	*widower*
bārenis, -im	*orphan*
brālēns, -am	*cousin*
brālis, -im	*brother*
audžubrālis	*foster brother*
pusbrālis	*step brother*
sievasbrālis	*wife's brother*
vīrabrālis	*husband's brother*
dēls, -am	*son*
audžudēls	*foster son*
brāļadēls	*brother's son*
krustdēls	*godson, nephew*
māsasdēls	*sister's son*
mazdēls	*grandson*
padēls	*stepson*
jauneklis, -im	*youth*
līgavainis, -im	*groom*
onkulis, -im / tēvocis, -im	*uncle*
puika, -am / zēns, -am	*boy (coll.)* / *boy*
puisis, -im	*lad, young man*
vecpuisis	*bachelor*
pusaudzis, -im	*teenager*
radinieks, -am	*relative*
svainis, -im	*brother-in-law*
šķirtenis, -im	*divorcee*
tēvs, -am	*father*
audžutēvs	*foster father*
krusttēvs	*godfather*
patēvs	*stepfather*
sievastēvs	*wife's father*
vectēvs / vecaistēvs, vecamtēvam	*grandfather*
vecis, -im	*old man*
vīrietis, -im	*man*
vīrs, -am	*husband*
znots, -am	*son-in-law*
bērns, -am	*child*
audžubērns	*foster child*
krustbērns	*godchild*
mazbērns	*grandchild*
jaunieši, -iem	*young people*
piederīgie, -iem	*members of immediate family*
radi, -iem	*relatives in general*

atraitne, -ei	*widow*
bārene, -ei	*orphan*
māsīca, -ai	*cousin*
māsa, -ai	*sister*
audžumāsa	*foster sister*
pusmāsa	*step sister*
sievasmāsa	*wife's sister*
vīramāsa	*husband's sister*
meita, -ai	*daughter*
audžumeita	*foster daughter*
brāļameita	*brother's daughter*
krustmeita	*goddaughter, niece*
māsasmeita	*sister's daughter*
mazmeita	*granddaughter*
pameita	*stepdaughter*
jaunava, -ai	*young woman, virgin*
līgava, -ai	*bride*
tante, -ei	*aunt*
meitene, -ei	*girl*
meita, -ai	*young woman*
vecmeita	*spinster*
pusaudze, -ei	*teenager*
radiniece, -ei	*relative*
svainiene, -ei	*sister-in-law*
šķirtene, -ei	*divorcee*
māte, -ei	*mother*
audžumāte	*foster mother*
krustmāte	*godmother*
pamāte	*stepmother*
sievasmāte	*wife's mother*
vecmāte / vecāmāte, vecaimātei	*grandmother*
vecene, -ei	*old woman*
sieviete, -ei	*woman*
sieva, -ai	*wife*
vedekla, -ai	*daughter-in-law*
tuvinieki, -iem	*nearest of kin*
vecāki, -iem	*parents*
audžuvecāki	*foster parents*
krustvecāki	*godparents*
vecvecāki	*grandparents*
zīdainis, -im	*infant*

V. LESSON 2.3

INTRODUCTION OF NOUNS THAT ARE NOT PERSONS' NAMES

INTRODUCTION OF THE FEMININE i-STEM NOUNS

POSSESSIVE STRUCTURES

VOCABULARY: HUMAN BODY PARTS

SUPPLEMENT: EXPANDED LIST & CHART OF BODY PARTS

2.3 GRAMMAR:

2.3.1 ALL LATVIAN NOUNS HAVE A GENDER, which should not be confused with sex. The gender distinctions are only a grammatical device that helps to handle the nouns. This device, therefore, extends even to the names of objects. Thus the nouns **mute** 'mouth', **mugura** 'back', **spalva** 'pen', etc. grammatically have the feminine gender (note their resemblance to the nouns like **māte** 'mother' and **māsa** 'sister'). Likewise, the nouns **dęguns** 'nose'. **vęders** 'stomach', **zīmulis** 'pencil', etc. have the grammatical masculine gender (and they resemble such nouns as **zēns** 'boy' and **brālis** 'brother').

2.3.2 FEMININE I-STEM NOUNS. Inthe previous lesson (see Gr-2.2.11), we noted four declensional stems to which the nouns, thus far introduced, belonged. In this lesson, nouns of one more declensional stem are added. These nouns are called feminine i-stem nouns, and they have the following features:

a. They have i as their stem vowel and use it (with one exception) as the other feminine nouns use theirs (**acs**, **acij** 'eye' is our example):

NOM. SG.	(acs)		**māsa**		**māte**
DAT. "	**acij**	cf.	**māsai**	and	**mātei**
NOM. PL.	**acis**	"	**māsas**	"	**mātes**
DAT. "	**acīm**	"	**māsām**	"	**mātēm**

b. These nouns omit their stem vowel in the nominative singular, where they look like the masculine a-stem nouns: **acs** (fem.), **plęcs** (masc.). This fact emphasises once more that BOTH PRINCIPAL PARTS OF EACH NOUN NEED TO BE MEMORIZED: **acs**, **acij** = fem. vs. **plęcs**, **plęcam** = masc.

c. In the dative sg. the fem. gender marker -i is spelled as -j to avoid the duplication of *-ii. Thus we write **acij**, instead of ***aciī**.

2.3.3 PHONOLOGICAL NOTES

a. The nom. sg. form **zods** 'chin' must be pronounced as [zuôts] with a [-t-] due to the voiceless ending -s.

b. The word tęvs 'father' is pronounced [tę̄ʷs] or even [tę̄s]. In all other forms, of course, the -v- is heard: [tę̄vam], [tę̄vi], etc.

c. In the word auss 'ear' there is a double -ss, and it must be pronounced longer than a single [s].

2.3.4 POSSESSIVE STRUCTURES. In Latvian there is no verb "to have". The possession or ownership must be expressed in a roundabout way. For example, the notion I have a sister comes out as "to me (there) is a sister": man ir māsa. Analysing the last sentence, we see that:

a. The logical subject is in the dative case - man 'to me'.
b. The verb is the 3rd common person of "to be" - ir 'is' or 'there is'.
c. The logical object is in the nominative case - māsa 'a sister'.

THIS ANALYSIS CAN BE TAKEN AS A FORMULA FOR MAKING ALL POSSESSIVE STRUCTURES.

2.3.41 Furthermore, this formula implies that THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN BEING AND HAVING IS EXPRESSED NOT BY TWO DIFFERENT VERBS, BUT BY TWO DIFFERENT SENTENCE STRUCTURES. Thus to say es esmu 'I am' the nominative subject and the verb form of "be" is used that agrees with the subject.
But, to say man ir 'I have', the dative subject and a fixed non-agreeing third person form of "be" are used.

EXPRESSIONS OF BEING:		EXPRESSIONS OF HAVING:		
STRUCTURE	E. MEANING	STRUCTURE	E. MEANING	LITERAL MEANING
es ęsmu	I am	man ir	I have	"to me is/are"
tu esi	you-sg. are	tev ir	you-sg. have	"to you-sg. is/are"
mēs ęsam	we are	mums ir	we have	"to us is/are"
jūs ęsat	you-pl. are	jums ir	you-pl. have	"to you-pl. is/are"
viņš ir	he is	viņam ir	he has	"to him is/are"
viņa ir	she is	viņai ir	she has	"to her is/are"
viņi ir	they-m. are	viņiem ir	they-m. have	"to them-m. is/are"
viņas ir	they-f. are	viņām ir	they-f. have	"to them-f. is/are"
māte ir	mother is	mātei ir	mother has	"to mother is/are"
zēni ir	boys are	zēniem ir	boys have	"to boys is/are"
etc.		etc.		

a. THE PAST AND FUTURE TENSES of the possessive structures are obtained by the change of the tenses of the 3rd person verb form: man bija 'I had', viņam bija 'he had'; mums būs 'we will have', mātei būs 'mother will have', etc.
b. The possessive structures in Latvian should remind you of similar English phrasings with the verb "belong": The pen belongs to me. Latv. Spalva pieder man man.

2.3.42 THE VERB COMPLEMENT OF BOTH STRUCTURES IS IN THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

BEING:	HAVING:
Ilze ir māsa. Ilze is a sister.	Ilzei ir māsa. Ilze has a sister.
Tu esi brālis. You are a brother.	Tev ir brālis. You have a brother.
Zēni bija draugi. The boys were friends.	Zēniem bija draugi. The boys had friends.
Meitene būs skolotāja. The girl will be a teacher.	Meitenei būs skolotāja. The girl will have a teacher.

Since the verb and the complement parts in such sentences are so similar, take care to use the correct subject form to avoid absurdities:

Ilzei ir grāmata. 'Ilse has a book.'
BUT: *Ilze ir grāmata. 'Ilse is a book.' (!)
Zēniem ir dęguni. -- a profound statement.
BUT: *Zēni ir dęguni. -- nonsense or an insult?

2.3.43 SOME LOCATIVE FORMS to go with the possessive structures are used in this lesson (other locatives will be studied in Unit 3):

sg. rokā	in the hand	pl. rokās	in the hands
" somā	in the satchel/bag	" somās	in the satchels/bags

a. In Latvian the possessive pronoun is omitted where its meaning is obvious: Man ir grāmata rokā. (NOT *manā rokā). However the translation must follow the rules of English usage: 'I have a book in my hand.'

2.3.44 QUESTION SENTENCES IN THE POSSESSIVE STRUCTURE:

YES OR NO QUESTION: Vai tev ir grāmatas? Do you have books?
ANS: Jā, man ir grāmatas. Yes, I have books.
ELICITS THE SUBJECT: Kam ir grāmatas? Who has books?
ANS: Man ir grāmatas. I have books.
ELICITS THE OBJECT: Kas tev ir (somā)? What do you have (in your satchel)?
ANS: Man ir grāmatas (somā). I have books (in my satchel).

2.3.45 QUESTION INTRODUCED BY KUR 'WHERE' elicits a location in the answer: Kur ir grāmata? 'Where is the book?' ANS: Grāmata ir te/somā. 'The book is here / in the bag.'

R-2.3 R E A D I N G:

KAS MUMS IR?

1. Jānis rāda un stāsta skolotājai, zēniem un meitenēm: "Man ir galva. Te ir mana galva. Man ir kakls; te ir mans kakls. Man ir divas rokas. Te ir mana viena roka; te ir mana otra roka. Te ir abas manas rokas. Rokām ir pirksti. Katrai rokai ir pieci pirksti. Te ir visi desmit mani pirksti. Man ir divas kājas. Man ir arī vēders un mugura. Te ir abas manas kājas, mans vēders un mana mugura."

man ir: the possessive structures begin

rokām ir / katrai rokai ir: additional possessive structures

man ir arī 'I also have'

2. Juris rāda un saka Jānim: "Tev ir seja. Man arī ir seja. Te ir tava seja, bet te ir mana seja. Tev un man ir piere, acis un uzacis. Te ir tava piere, tavas acis un tavas uzacis. Te ir mana piere, manas acis un uzacis. Mums abiem ir mutes, deguni un zodi. Te ir tava mute, tavs deguns un tavs zods. Te ir mana mute, deguns un zods. Mums katram ir divas ausis. Te ir tava viena auss, un te ir tava otra auss. Manas abas ausis ir te. Mums arī ir mati. Te ir mani, bet te ir tavi mati."

tavas acis: note the modif. with an i-stem fem. noun
mums abiem ir 'we both / both of us have'

mana: the modifier agrees with the first noun
mums katram ir 'each of us has'
viena/otra auss: here -s is the feminine i-stem nom. sg. ending

3. Skolotāja jautā skolniekiem un skolniecēm: "Kas jums visiem ir?" Viņi atbild: "Mums visiem ir galvas, rokas un kājas." Skolotāja viņiem atkal jautā: "Kas vēl jums ir?" "Mums ir arī vēderi un muguras," atbild bērni. Skolotāja vēl jautā: "Vai jums katram ir divi deguni un divas ausis?" "Mums ir divas ausis," saka bērni, "bet tikai viens deguns." "Albert, kur ir tavs deguns?" skolotāja jautā. "Te ir mans deguns," Alberts rāda. "Arī man ir tikai viens deguns, bet divas ausis."

Kas jums visiem ir? 'What do all of you have?'

kas vēl 'what else'

vēl jautā 'is asking in addition'

kur ir 'where is'

arī man ir 'I, too, have'

4. Jānis stāsta: "Man ir māsa. Anna ir mana māsa." Arī Anna saka: "Man ir brālis. Jānis ir mans brālis." Skolotāja Annai jautā: "Vai tev ir vēl citi brāļi un māsas?" Anna viņai atbild: "Nē, maniem vecākiem ir tikai divi bērni, es un Jānis." Tad Anna jautā Ingrīdai: "Vai tev ir brāļi un māsas?" "Jā, man ir māsa un brālis," Ingrīda stāsta Annai. "Manam tēvam un mātei ir trīs bērni."

vēl citi 'still other, additional'

5. Alberts saka: "Man ir draugs, un es esmu draugs. Mans draugs ir Andris. Es esmu draugs Andrim. Jāni, vai tu arī esi draugs, un vai tev ir draugi?" "Jā," Jānis atbild, "arī man ir draugi. Es esmu draugs visiem zēniem."

man ir vs. es esmu, etc: the structures of HAVING vs. BEING are shown for the rest of the page

draugs Andrim 'a friend to Andris'. DON'T CONFUSE THE 'TO/FOR' DATIVE WITH THE POSSESSIVE STRUCT. DATIVE SUBJECT

6. Kristīne saka tāpat: "Visām meitenēm ir draudzenes. Visas meitenes ir draudzenes viena otrai. Atkal draudzenēm ir vēl citas draudzenes. Arī man ir draudzene. Ingrīda ir mana draudzene, bet viņai ir vēl otra draudzene."

atkal 'again, furthermore'

vēl otra 'still another'

* *
*

7. Kas man ir rokā? Tev ir zīmulis rokā. Kas vēl man ir rokā? Otrā rokā tev ir burtnīca. Kas ir meitenēm rokās? Viņām ir grāmatas rokās. Katrai meitenei ir grāmata rokā. Kas ir Jānim rokā? Vienā rokā Jānim ir spalva, otrā rokā viņam ir zīmulis. Viņam ir spalva un zīmulis rokās.

rokā 'in my hand': see esp. note a. in 2.3.43 about the omission of the possessive:
rokās 'in their hands'
(meitenei) rokā 'in her hand'
(Jānim) rokā 'in

vienā/otrā rokā: note the agreement in the number and case

8. Vai tev ir soma? Jā, man ir. Kur ir tava soma? Mana soma ir te. Kas tev ir somā? Somā man ir burtnīcas. Kas vēl tev ir somā? Man ir arī četri zīmuļi somā. Kur ir citi zīmuļi? Man ir vēl trīs zīmuļi rokā, ne somā.

9. Visiem skolniekiem ir somas. Visām skolniecēm ir somas. Somās visiem ir spalvas, zīmuļi, grāmatas un burtnīcas. Vai arī jums ir somas? Jā, mums ir. Kas jums ir somās? Mums ir tikai grāmatas un zīmuļi somās. Burtnīcas un spalvas mums ir rokās.

visiem ir 'everybody has'
(OR: 'all have')

10. Ko bērni vakar darīja? Viņi mums rādīja un stāstīja. Kas bērniem bija? Viņiem bija galvas un kakli. Kas vēl viņiem bija? Viņiem bija arī rokas un kājas. Vai viņiem bija brāļi un māsas? Ja, viņiem bija. Jānim bija māsa. Annai bija brālis. Aivaram bija brālis, un Ivaram bija brālis. Aivars un Ivars bija brāļi. Ilgai bija māsa, un Ilzei bija māsa. Ilga un Ilze bija māsas. Zēniem un meitenēm bija draugi un draudzenes. Zēni un meitenes bija draugi un draudzenes.

bērniem bija 'the children had'

11. Ko bērni darīs rīt? Vai viņiem būs somas? Jā, viņiem būs. Kas viņiem būs somās? Viņiem būs burtnīcas un spalvas somās. Kas vēl viņiem būs? Viņiem būs arī zīmuļi un grāmatas. Katram bērnam būs grāmata vai burtnīca rokā. Vai arī rīt meitenēm būs draudzenes? Viņām bija draudzenes vakar un būs draudzenes rīt. Viņas ir draudzenes šodien un būs draudzenes rīt.

vai viņiem <u>būs</u>? '<u>will</u> they <u>have</u>?'

2.3 VOCABULARY

NOUNS
MASCULINE gender:

tēvs, tēvam	father
vecāki, -kiem	parents (mostly pl.)
kakls, kaklam	neck
pirksts, -tam	finger
vēders, -ram	stomach, belly
deguns, -nam	nose
zods, zodam	chin
mats, matam	a strand of hair
mati, matiem	hair
zīmulis,-ļim	pencil

NOUNS
FEMININE gender:

māte, mātei	mother	
galva, galvai	head	
roka, rokai	hand <u>and</u> arm	
kāja, kājai	foot <u>and</u> leg	
mugura, -rai	spine, back	
seja, sejai	face	
mute, mutei	mouth	
piere, pierei	forehead	
acs, ac<u>ij</u>	eye	fem <u>i</u>-stem n.
uzacs, -c<u>ij</u>	eyebrow	" " " "
auss, aus<u>ij</u>	ear	" " " "
soma, somai	bag, satchel	
grāmata, -tai	book	
burtnīca,-cai	notebook	
spalva, -vai	pen	

PRONOUNS:

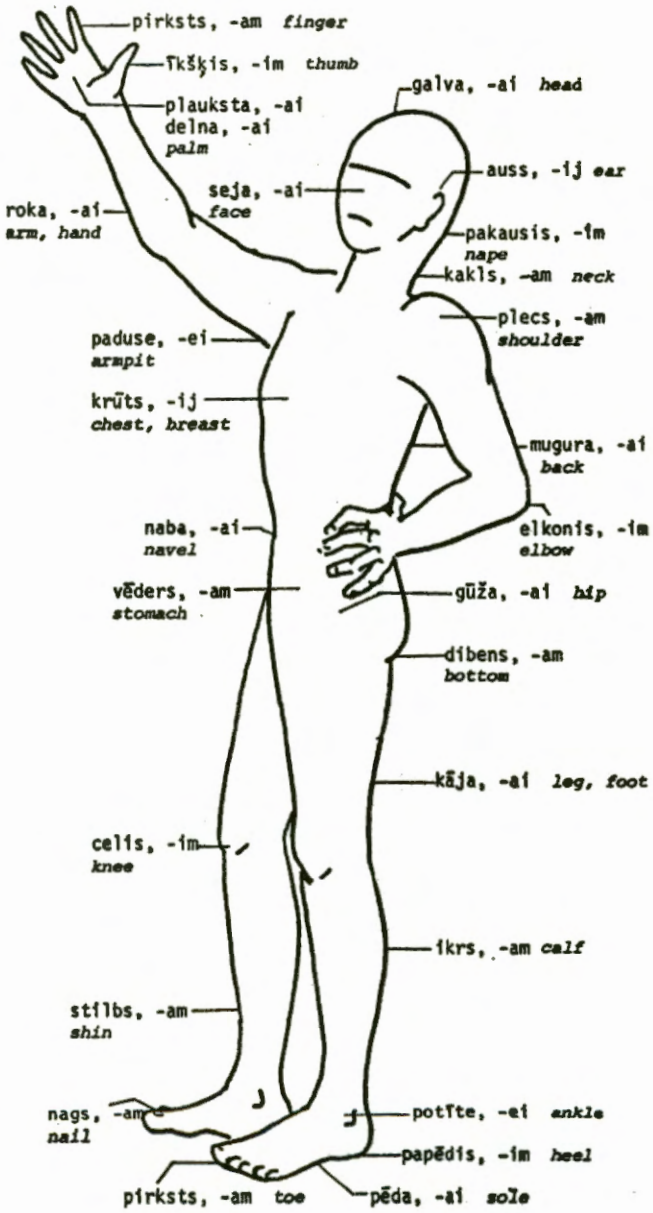
cits, f. cita	other	)
katrs, f. katra	each, every	)

VERB:
rādīt: rāda, rādīja, rādīs III-ī tr: show, point out

INTROD. PARTICLE:
kur where

S-2.3 PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY

acs, acij	eye
artērija, -ai	artery
asinis, -īm	blood
asinsvads, -am	blood vessel
augšstilbs,-am	thigh
augums, -umam	stature, build
aukslējas, -ām	palate
auss, ausij	ear
bārda, bārdai	beard
celis, celim	knee
ciska, ciskai	thigh
dęguns, -unam	nose
dęlna, dęlnai	palm
dibęns, -ęnam	bottom, posterior
dzīsla, -ai	sinew
ęlkonis, -im	elbow
galva, galvai	head
gurns, gurnam	hip, loin
gūža, gūžai	haunch, hip
ikrs, ikram	calf
īkšķis, -im	thumb
kāja, kājai	leg and foot
kājas pirksts	toe
kakls, kaklam	neck
kauls, kaulam	bone
krūts, krūtij	breast
pl. krūtis,-īm	breasts; chest
kuņģis, -im	stomach (organ)
ķermenis, -im	body
liels. lielam	shin, shank
loceklis, -im	limb
locītava, -ai	joint
lūpa, lūpai	lip
mats, matam	strand of hair
pl. mati,-iem	hair (collectively)
mēle, mēlei	tongue
miesa, miesai	flesh, body
miesas audi	body tissue
mugura, -ai	back
mugurkauls,-am	backbone, spine
muskulis, -im	muscle
mute, mutei	mouth
naba, nabai	navel
nags, nagam	finger/toe nail
nāss, nāsij	nostril
nervs, nervam	nerve
paduse, -ei	armpit
pakausis, -im	nape
papēdis, -im	heel
pēda, pēdai	sole
piere, pierei	forehead
pirksts, -am	finger, toe



plaksts, -am	eyelid
plauksta, -ai	palm of hand
plauša, plaušai	lung
plęcs, plęcam	shoulder
potīte, -ītei	ankle
riba, ribai	rib
roka, rokai	arm and hand
seja, sejai	face
sirds, sirdij	heart
skropsta, -ai	eyelash
smadzenes. -ēm	brain
smaganas, -ām	gums
(apakš)stilbs, stilbam	shin, shank

šūna, šūnai	(body) cell
ūsa, ūsai	whisker
pl. ūsas, -ām	whiskers, moustache
uzacs, uzacij	eyebrow
vaigs, vaigam	cheek; face
vēdęrs, -am	stomach, belly
vēna, vēnai	vein
zobs, zobam	tooth
zods, zodam	chin
žoklis, -im	jaw

UNIT THREE

LESSONS 3.1; 3.2; 3.3 (VI, VII, VIII)

LEARNING THE LOCATIVE CASE AND THE PRESENT TENSE

GRAMMAR

THE LOCATIVE CASE: ITS FORMS AND USES

THE USES OF THE PRONOUNS šis AND tas

THE ADJECTIVES: THEIR TYPES AND USES

DIVISIONS OF LATVIAN VERBS

THE MAIN PATTERNS OF THE PRESENT TENSE CONJUGATION, ACTIVE & REFLEXIVE

THE ADVERBS OF MANNER: THEIR FORMATION AND USE

IDIOMATIC STRUCTURES EXPRESSING: LIKING, SUITING, FEELING WELL, HAVING AN ACHE, HAVING ON CLOTHING

ADJECTIVAL QUESTIONS WITH Kāds 'OF WHAT KIND'; THEIR ANSWERS

ADVERBIAL QUESTIONS WITH Kur 'WHERE', Kad 'WHEN', Kā 'HOW', Kāpēc 'WHY'; THEIR ANSWERS

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY kad 'WHEN' AND jo 'FOR, BECAUSE'

VOCABULARY

PARTS AND CONTENTS OF THE HOUSE

ADJECTIVES: DIMENSIONAL, CONTRASTIVE, COLOR, STATE OF BEING

ADVERBS OF MANNER FROM THE LATTER GROUP

ITEMS OF CLOTHING AND FOOTWEAR

REPRESENTATIVE SAMPLES OF ACTIVE AND REFLEXIVE VERBS

SUPPLEMENTS

DIMENSIONAL, CONTRASTIVE AND COLOR ADJECTIVES

CLOTHING AND FOOTWEAR

DECLENSION CHART WITH THE NOMINATIVE, DATIVE & LOCATIVE FORMS FILLED IN

VI

LESSON 3.1

THE LOCATIVE CASE - ITS MAKING AND USES

ADJECTIVES MODIFYING AND DESCRIBING NOUNS

THE PRONOUN šis, šī 'THIS'

PRESENT TENSE CONJUGATION OF THE VERB iet

SENTENCES WITH PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

QUESTIONS WITH Kāds, -a AND THEIR ANSWERS

INTRODUCTION OF THE DECLENSION CHART

VOCABULARY: HOUSE PARTS; ROOMS & THEIR CONTENTS

SUPPLEMENT: DIMENSIONAL & OTHER CONTRASTIVE ADJECTIVES

DECLENSION CHART WITH LOCATIVES (& A BLANK)

3.1 GRAMMAR:

3.1.1 NOTES ON WORD FORMS & CLASSES

3.1.11 MASCULINE u-STEM NOUNS are very few, but often used, and thus this rare pattern is kept alive. We are introducing the noun **ledus, ledum** of this declension.

3.1.12 Some masc. i-stem nouns like **skapis, skapim** CANNOT PALATALIZE ITS BASE -p-, because it is a labial consonant. In the plural, therefore, it changes its stem vowel -i- to -j- AND KEEPS IT between its base and the plural suffixes: **skapji** 'closets', **skapjiem** 'to/for closets'.

3.1.13 THE PRONOUN **šis**, FEM. **šī** IS NOT REGULARLY DECLINED, and it is best to memorize all its forms:

SG. nom. masc.	**šis**, fem.	**šī**	'this'	PL. m.	**šie**, f.	**šīs/šās**	'these'
" dat. "	**šim**, "	**šai**	'to/for this'	" "	**šiem** "	**šīm/šām**	'to/for these'

Note the variations in some of the feminine forms.

3.1.14 ALL ADJECTIVES FOLLOW THE a-STEM PATTERNS OF THE NOUNS as do all regular pronouns and cardinal numerals (see 2.2.16): **liela māja** 'big house', **lielai mājai**, etc., **liels koks** 'big tree', **lielam kokam**, etc.

a. Going together with the nouns of other declensions, the adjectives keep their a-stem suffixes: **biezs ledus** 'thick ice', **augstam skapim** 'for a tall cupboard', **tīra virtuve** 'clean kitchen', **jaunas plītis** 'new stoves', etc.

3.1.15 PRESENT TENSE OF THE VERB iet: The meaning of this verb is 'to go walk on foot. It never means 'to ride in/on a vehicle'. (For the latter sense, use the verb **braukt**: **brauc, brauca, brauks.**)

1st sg.	**eju**	'I go'
2nd "	**ej**	'you-sg. go'
3rd com.	**iet**	'he-she-they go'
1st pl.	**ejam**	'we go'
2nd pl.	**ejat**	'you-pl. go'

The 3rd common form iet is irregular.

3.1.2 THE LOCATIVE CASE indicates the meanings that in English are expressed by the prepositions in, into, less often on.
The locative forms are derived from the noun principal parts in the ways described below.

3.1.21 IN THE SINGULAR, LENGTHEN THE DECLENSIONAL STEM VOWEL OF ALL NOUNS:

MASC.	NOM.	koks 'tree'	skapis 'cupboard'	ļedus 'ice'	
	DAT.	kokam 'for tree'	skapim 'for cupboard'	ļedum 'for ice'	
	LOC.	kokā 'in tree'	skapī 'in cupboard'	ļedū 'in ice'	
FEM.	NOM.	māja 'house'	plīts 'stove'	virtuve 'kitchen'	
	DAT.	mājai 'for house'	plītij 'for stove'	virtuvei 'for kitchen'	
	LOC.	mājā 'in house'	plītī 'in stove'	virtuvē 'in kitchen'	

3.1.22 IN THE PLURAL, THE FEMININE NOUNS LENGTHEN THE STEM VOWEL & ADD -s:

NOM.	mājas 'houses'	plītis 'stoves'	virtuves 'kitchens'
LOC.	mājās 'in houses'	plītīs 'in stoves'	virtuvēs 'in kitchens'

3.1.23 IN THE PLURAL, THE MASCULINE NOUNS ADD A GENERALIZED SUFFIX -os:

NOM.	koki 'trees'	skapji 'cupboards'	ļedi 'ice floes'
DAT.	kokiem 'for trees'	skapjiem 'for cupboards'	ļediem 'for ice floes'
LOC.	kokos 'in trees'	skapjos' 'in cupboards'	ļedos 'in ice floes'

a. An i-stem noun like **brālis** 'brother' would have its palatalized -ļ- in all plural forms, including locative: nom. **brāļi**, dat. **brāļiem**, loc. **brāļos**.
b. By now you may note that all masculine decl. stems have a generalized set of suffixes in plural.

3.1.24 THE ADJECTIVES, REGULAR PRONOUNS & NUMERALS FORM THEIR LOCATIVES AFTER THE NOUN a-STEM PATTERNS: **lielā mājā** 'in a big house', **divās mājās** 'in two houses'; **manā kokā** 'in my tree', **visos kokos** 'in all trees', etc. And similarly **viņā** 'in him/her', **viņos** 'in them-masc.', **viņās** 'in them-fem.'

3.1.25 NONREGULAR PRONOUNS have the following locative forms: **manī** 'in me' **tevī** 'in you-sg.', **mūsos** 'in us', **jūsos** 'in you-pl.', **šajā** 'in this' (both masc. & fem.), **šajos** 'in these-m.', **šajās** 'in these-f.' And also: **trijos** 'in 3-masc.' **trijās** 'in 3-fem.' - although here the indeclinable **trīs** can also be used.
a. Instead of the loc.sg. **šajā** 'in this', two other commomn gender forms **šinī** & **šai** can also be used. In loc.pl. there are common gender forms **šais** & **šinīs** that also mean 'in these'. We, however, will use the more regular loc.sg.com. **šajā** loc.pl.m. **šajos** & loc.pl.f. **šajās**.

3.1.3 DECLENSION CHART. With this lesson, you are given a half-filled declension chart. The top half of it shows the regular declension patterns, the bottom part takes care of all the others
The forms introduced so far (including the locatives of this lesson) are already filled in. The forms which you have not yet learned will appear in the spaces that are now still blank.
Use this chart for memorization and reference.

3.1.4 SENTENCE STRUCTURES

3.1.41 SENTENCES WITH PREDICATE ADJECTIVES. An adjective may follow a linking verb. It describes the subject and is called predicate adjective. Like the subject, it must take the nominative case and must agree with the subject also in the number and gender: **Koks ir augsts.** 'The tree is tall.' **Virtuve bija tīra.** 'The kitchen was clean.' **Šīs mājas izskatās vecas** 'These houses look old.'
a. Note that the pronoun modifying the noun displays its own features for the same number, gender & case: **šīs mājas**

3.1.42 THE ADJECTIVAL PRONOUN **Kāds** (fem. **Kāda**, pl. **Kādi/Kādas**) introduce questions that need the predicate adjectives in the answers. The pronoun must have the nominative case and anticipate the noun also in the number and gender: **Kāds ir koks?** 'How is the tree?' (ANS: **Koks ir augsts.**) **Kāda izskatījās virtuve?** 'How did the kitchen look?' (ANS: **Virtuve izskatījās tīra.**) **Kādas izskatās šīs mājas?** 'How do these houses look?' (ANS: **Šīs mājas izskatās vecas.**)

a. With the nouns this pronoun means 'What kind of?': **Kādas mēbeles ir šajā istabā?** 'What kind of furniture is in this room?'

b. This pronoun has a demonstrative counterpart in **tāds, -a** 'such, of such kind': **Tādas te ir visas mājas.** 'Such / Of such kind are all houses here.'

3.1.43 LOCATIVES IN LINKING VERB SENTENCES are necessary ingredients if the predicate nouns and adjectives are absent. The locatives then act as adverbial complements, indicating where something is (located): **Māja atrodas dārzā.** 'The house is located in the yard.' **Virtuvē ir plīts.** 'In the kitchen (there) is a stove.' (Note the expletive there in the last English translation, which is not an adverb, but an empty filler of the subject position before the verb.)

3.1.44 LOCATIVES IN ACTION VERB SENTENCES are optional additions, because the intransitive verbs need no complement. However, the locatives may modify such verbs by indicating where a certain action is taking place: **Mēs ejam.** 'We are walking.' **Mēs ejam virtuvē.** 'We are walking into the kitchen.'

3.1.45 THE PARTICLE Kur introduces questions that have locatives in their answers: **Kur atrodas māja?** 'Where is the house located?' (ANS: **Dārzā.**) **Kur ir plīts?** 'Where is the stove?' (ANS: **Virtuvē.**) **Kur jūs ejat?** 'Where are you going?' (ANS: **Mājā.** 'Into the house.')

a. The answers to Kur-questions may, of course, contain also the place adverbs: **Kur ir Jānis?** 'Where is John?' - ANS: **Jānis ir te.** 'John is here.'

3.1 READING

KĀDA IZSKATĀS MĀJA?

Te ir māja. Šī ir māja. Māja ir gara. Māja ir plata. Šī māja ir gara un plata. Māja nav augsta. Šī māja ir gara un plata, bet nav augsta. Šī māja ir zema.

Māja ir gara. - predicate adjectives begin; note their agreement with the subject noun in the case, gender & number

2. **Kāda ir šī māja? Šī māja ir gara. Šī ir gara māja. Šī ir arī plata māja. Šī nav augsta māja. Šī ir zema māja.**

gara māja - now the adjective modifies the noun; note the agreement rule still in force

3. **Kādas ir citas mājas? Dažas mājas ir šauras, vairākas ir augstas. Vēl citas ir zemas. Šīs visas ir labas mājas, neviena nav slikta.**

vēl citas 'still others'

šīs visas - translate 'all these'

4. Kāda izskatās otra māja, jauna vai veca? Otra māja neizskatās ne jauna, ne veca. Tādas te ir daudzas mājas.

a triple negative in Latvian: neizskatās ne..., ne... 'looks neither..., nor...'

5. Kur māja atrodas? Šī māja atrodas dārzā. Te visas mājas atrodas dārzos. Šis dārzs ir plašs. Māja atrodas plašā dārzā. Dārzā aug koki. Daži koki ir lieli un resni. Šie ir lieli un resni koki. Daži citi koki ir mazi un tievi. Šie ir mazi un tievi koki. Māja atrodas kokos.

plašs: pronounce it as [plašš]

kokos: translate here 'among the trees'

6. Mēs ejam mājā. Šajā mājā ir vairākas istabas. Istabās ir mēbeles. Istabām ir grīda, griesti un sienas. Dažas sienas ir biezas, citas plānas. Sienās ir logi un durvis. Logos ir aizkari. Logiem ir aizkari. Šajās durvīs ir atslēga. Šīm durvīm ir atslēga.

istabās ir - istabām ir: distinguish the locative vs. the possessive phrases in this paragraph

7. Es eju un tu ej istabā. Mēs abi ejam šajā istabā. Šī istaba ir viesistaba. Te ir vairākas mēbeles: garš dīvāns, divi zemi, īsi galdi, četri zemi un plati krēsli, televizors un skapis. Skapī atrodas grāmatas. Skapī ir biezas un plānas grāmatas.

istabā - translate: 'into a room'

vairākas mēbeles 'several pieces of furniture'

8. Otra istaba ir ēdamistaba. Nu jūs ejat ēdamistabā. Kādas mēbeles atrodas te, šajā istabā? Ēdamistabā ir ēdamgalds un sešī augsti krēsli. Te ir arī vēl viens skapis. Šajā skapī ir trauki.

Kādas mēbeles... 'What kind of furniture...'

vēl viens 'one more'

9. Te ir vēl viena istaba. Šī istaba ir virtuve. Jūs ejat un mēs ejam virtuvē.

Tagad mēs visi esam virtuvē. Te atrodas izlietne, plīts un ledusskapis. Virtuvē ir arī daudzi plaukti un atvilktnes. Plauktos un atvilktnēs ir trauki un rīki. Virtuve izskatās tīra, tikai izlietne ir netīra. Pašlaik izlietnē ir netīri trauki.

mēs visi 'all of us'

10. Kas dzīvo šajā mājā? Te dzīvo Jānis un Anna. Kas dzīvo otrā mājā? Otrā mājā dzīvo Ilga un Ilze. Te ir vēl viena māja. Šī māja ir ļoti liela. Kas dzīvo te? Šajā mājā neviens nedzīvo. Šī māja ir skola. Te bērni iet un mācās, bet skolā viņi nedzīvo. Visi zēni un meitenes dzīvo mājās.

neviens nedzīvo - note the double negative

mājās 'at home'

3.1 VOCABULARY

NOUNS - masc.		NOUNS - fem.	
aizkars, -ram	curtain	atslēga, -gai	key
dārzs, dārzam	garden, yard	atvilktne, -nei	drawer
dīvāns, -nam	divan, sofa	durvis, durvīm	door (plural only)
galds, galdam	table	grīda, grīdai	floor
ēdamgalds	dining table	istaba, istabai	room, chamber
griesti, -tiem	ceiling (plural only)	ēdamistaba	dining room
koks, kokam	tree; wood (material)	viesistaba	guest or living room
krēsls, -lam	chair	izlietne, -nei	sink
ledus, ledum	ice	māja, mājai	house
lôgs, lôgam	window	pl. mājas	houses; home
plaukts, -tam	shelf	mēbele, mēbelei	a piece of furniture
rīks, rīkam	tool, utensil	pl. mēbeles	furniture
skapis, skapim	cupboard, closet	plīts, plītij	stove, range
ledusskapis	icebox, refrigerator	siena, sienai	wall
televizors,-ram	television set	skola, skolai	school
trauks, traukam	vessel, dish	virtuve, -vei	kitchen

PRONOUNS:

kāds, kāda	how, of what kind
tāds, tāda	such, of such kind
neviens, neviena	no one, none
šis, šī	this

INDEFINITE NUMERALS:

daži, dažas	some
vairāki, vairākas	several
daudzi, daudzas	many

ADVERBS:

pašlaik	at this time, right now
ļoti	very

A D J E C T I V E S:

liels, liela	big, large, great	mazs, maza	small, little
garš, gara	long; tall (person)	îss, îsa	short
plats, plata	wide, broad	šaurs, šaura	narrow
plašs, plaša	broad, expansive	(šaurs, šaura	restricted, limited)
aûgsts, aûgsta	high, tall	zęms, zęma	low
ręsns, ręsna	thick as a barrel	tiêvs, tiêva	thin as a stick
biezs, bieza	thick as a wall	plâns, plâna	thin as a sheet
labs, laba	good	slikts, slikta	bad
jaûns, jaûna	new; young	vęcs, vęca	old
tīrs, tīra	clean	netīrs, netīra	not clean, dirty

V E R B S:

aûgt: aûg, aûga, aûgs I-g/dz itr/lk: grow
dzîvot: dzîvo, dzîvoja, dzîvôs II-o itr: live (in), dwell
atrastiês: atrodas, atradâs, atradîsiês I-reg. lk: be located/situated
izskatîtiês: izskatâs, izskatījâs, izskatîsiês III-ī lk: look (like)
mâcîtiês: mâcâs, mâcījâs, mâcîsiês III-ī itr./tr: learn, study

3.1 SUPPLEMENT: CONTRASTIVE ADJECTIVES

A. DIMENSIONAL ADJECTIVES

dižs, diža	*grand, great*	mazs, maza	*small, little, tiny*
liels, liela	*big, large, great*	neliels, neliela	*"not big" = smallish*
milzīgs, milzīga	*gigantic, huge*	sīks, sīka	*slight, tiny*
milzu (= milzīgs)		niecīgs, niecīga	*insignificant*
augsts, augsta	*high, tall*	zems, zema	*low*
dziļš, dziļa	*deep*	nedziļs, nedziļa	*"not deep"*
		seklis, sekla	*shallow*
garš, gara	*long*	īss, īsa	*short*
ilgs, ilga	*long (in duration)*	" "	*short, brief*
plats, plata	*wide*	šaurs, šaura	*narrow*
resns, resna	*fat, thick (as a barrel)*	tievs, tieva	*thin (as a pencil)*
biezs, bieza	*thick (as a wall)*	plāns, plāna	*thin (as a sheet)*
" "	*thick (as a bush)*	rets, reta	*sparse*
" "	*thick (as mud, fog)*	šķidrs, šķidra	*thin, liquid*
biežs, bieža	*frequent*	rets, reta	*rare*
smags, smaga	*heavy*	viegls, viegla	*light*
grūts, grūta	*heavy (arch.); hard (a task)*	viegls, viegla	*easy*

B. OTHER CONTRASTIVE ADJECTIVES

cietS, cieta	*hard*	mīksts, mīksta	*soft*
dārgs, dārga	*dear, expensive*	lēts, lēta	*inexpensive, cheap*
glīts, glīta	*pretty, handsome*	neglīts, neglīta	*ugly*
gluds, gluda	*smooth*	negluds, negluda	*coarse, rough*
		raupjš, raupja	*coarse, rough*
jauns, jauna	*young, new*	vecs, veca	*old*
līdzens, līdzena	*even (& flat)*	nelīdzens, nelīdzena	*uneven, bumpy*
pilns, pilna	*full*	tukšs, tukša	*empty*
skaists, skaista	*pretty, beautiful*	(neglīts)	
smalks, smalka	*fine, refined*	rupjš, rupja	*coarse*
taisns, taisna	*straight*	līks, līka	*bent*
		greizs, greiza	*crooked*
tiešs, tieša	*direct, straight*	netiešs, netieša	*indirect*
tāls, tāla	*distant, far*	tuvs, tuva	*near, close*

BASIC LATVIAN

THE LOCATIVES ADDED

WRITE-IN DECLENSION CHART

NOUNS:	MASC. a-stem	MASC. i-stem	MASC. u-stem	FEM. a-stem	FEM. e-stem	FEM. i-stem
SINGULAR						
nom.kas?	k o k s	s k a p i s	l e d u s	m ā j a	v i r t u v e	p l Ī t s
gen.kā?						
dat.kam?	k o k a m	s k a p i m	l e d u m	m ā j a i	virtuv e i	plīt i j
acc.ko?						
loc.kur?	*kok-ā*	*skap-ī*	*led-ū*	*māj-ā*	*virtuv-ē*	*plīt-ī*
	all masc.adjs., reg.prons.&nums. are a-stem decl.			all fem.adjs., reg.prons.&nums. are a-stem decl.		
PLURAL						
nom.kas?	kok-i	skapj-i	led-i	māj-as	virtuv-es	plīt-is
gen.kā?						
dat.kam?	kok-iem	skapj-iem	led-iem	māj-ām	virtuv-ēm	plīt-īm
acc.ko?						
loc.kur?	*kok-os*	*skapj-os*	*led-os*	*māj-ās*	*virtuv-ēs*	*plīt-īs*

SPECIAL DECLENSION PATTERNS

SINGULAR	'that' masc.	'that' fem.	'this' masc.	'this' fem.	'I'	'you-sg.'	'-self' (refl.)	'(the very) -self' masc.	'(the very) -self' fem.
nom.kas?	tas,	tā	šis,	šī	es	tu	---	pats,	pati
gen.kā?									
dat.kam?	tam	tai	šim	šai	man	tev	sev	paš-am	paš-ai
acc.ko?								(etc. -- regular	
loc.kur?	*tajā*		*šajā*		*manī*	*tevī*	*sevī*	a-stem forms)	

PLURAL	'those' m.	'those' f.	'these' m.	'these' f.	'we'	'you-pl.'	(no pl.)	'three' masc.	'three' common	'three' fem.
nom.kas?	tie,	tās	šie,	šīs	mēs	jūs	----		trīs	
gen.kā?										
dat.kam?	tiem,	tām	šiem,	šīm	mums	jums	----	trijiem,	trim	trijām
acc.ko?										
loc.kur?	*tajos,*	*tajās*	*šajos,*	*šajās*	*mūsos*	*jūsos*	----	*trijos,*		*trijās*

BASIC LATVIAN

WRITE-IN DECLENSION CHART

NOUNS:	MASC. a-stem	MASC. i-stem	MASC. u-stem	FEM. a-stem	FEM. e-stem	FEM. i-stem
SINGULAR						
nom.kas?						
gen.kā?						
dat.kam?						
acc.ko?						
loc.kur?						
PLURAL	all masc.adjs., reg.prons.&nums. are a-stem decl.			all fem.adjs., reg.prons.&nums. are a-stem decl.		
nom.kas?						
gen.kā?						
dat.kam?						
acc.ko?						
loc.kur?						

SPECIAL DECLENSION PATTERNS

SINGULAR	'that' masc.	'that' fem.	'this' masc.	'this' fem.	'I'	'you-sg.'	'-self' (refl.)	'(the very) -self' masc.	'(the very) -self' fem.
nom.kas?									
gen.kā?									
dat.kam?									
acc.ko?									
loc.kur?									

PLURAL	'those' m.	'those' f.	'these' m.	'these' f.	'we'	'you-pl.'	(no pl.)	'three' masc.	'three' common	'three' fem.
nom.kas?										
gen.kā?										
dat.kam?										
acc.ko?										
loc.kur?										

VII

LESSON 3.2

CERTAIN LOCATIVES USED AS PREPOSITIONAL ADVERBS

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS šis VS. tas

THE THREE MAIN DIVISIONS OF LATVIAN VERBS & THEIR SUBGROUPS

SAMPLES OF THE PRESENT TENSE CONJUGATION PATTERNS

THE QUESTION Kas tas ir? AND ITS ANSWERS

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS WITH THE COLOR ADJECTIVES

VOCABULARY: HOUSE PARTS (CONTINUED)
BASIC COLOR ADJECTIVES

SUPPLEMENT: COLOR ADJECTIVES

3.2 GRAMMAR

3.2.1 LOCATIVES AS PREPOSITIONAL ADVERBS. There are certain nouns whose locative cases indicate relative positions and often REFER TO SOME OTHER NOUN IN SOME OTHER DECLENSIONAL CASE. These are the locatives like **vidū** 'in the middle', malā 'on the side', priekšā 'in front', iekšā 'inside', etc. First, note that these expressions are adverbial, because they do the job of space adverbs. Furthemore, like prepositions, they can govern another noun: **dārza** vidū 'in the middle of the yard', mājas/mājai priekšā 'in front of the house'.

a. Most of these adverbial locatives take another noun in the genitive case (which we have not yet studied), but some of them may allow dative. (See their list in 3.2 Vocabulary.)

3.2.2 DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS šis 'THIS' AND tas 'THAT' As in English, the pronouns of this category point out nouns, and the pronoun choice depends on the viewpoint of the speaker: šis (in all its possible case forms) refers to the objects nearer to the speaker, and tas (in all its forms) - to more remote objects:

Šis ir zēns, bet tā ir meitene. 'This is a boy but that is a girl.'
Šim zēnam ir brūni mati, bet tam zēnam - sarkani. 'This boy has brown hair, but that boy (has) red (hair).'
Šajās atvilktnēs ir rīki; tajos plauktos ir trauki. 'In these drawers are tools; on those shelves are dishes.'

a. Both pronouns have their own declensional pattern that must be learned.

b. When tas is not used in the opposition to šis, it has other meanings and functions. About them see 3.2.5 below and Lesson 3.3.

3.2.3 THE GROUPINGS OF LATVIAN VERBS. Loking at the verb principal parts introduced so far, we may note - first of all - that for some verbs all principal parts end in -s, for others only the future form. The verbs of the first category are called "reflexive"; the others are "active" verbs. The reflexive verbs are derived from the corresponding active ones, and we will take them up in some detail later. These are the verbs like atrasties 'be situated'.

3.2.31 THREE MAIN DIVISIONS("CONJUGATIONS") OF THE ACTIVE VERBS can be established by looking at their principal parts:

I. The conjugational endings (underlined) are attached to the verb BASES (CAPITALIZED) in all three tenses:

AUG, AUGa, AUGs 'grow';	IR, BIJa, BŪs 'be';	SKRIEN,
paLIEK, paLIKa, paLIKs 'stay';	IET, GĀJa, IEs 'go';	SKRĒJa,
	ŅĀK, NĀCa, NĀKs 'come';	SKRIEs 'run'.

The 1st principal part has no endings, but other present tense forms do: SKRIENu 'I run', SKRIENam 'we run', etc.

II. A long *vowel* (plus *-j-*) is inserted between the verb BASES and the conjugational endings in all three tenses:

DZĪV*o*, DZĪV*oj*a, DZĪV*o*s 'live';	JAUTā, JAUTā*j*a, JAUTās 'ask';
TROKŠŅ*o*, TROKŠŅ*oj*a, TROKŠŅ*o*s 'be noisy';	KLUSē, KLUSē*j*a, KLUSēs 'be silent'.

The *-o-* is a diphthong [uo] and thus has the same length as a long vowel. As in I., other pres. tense forms have endings: DZĪV*oj*u, DZĪV*oj*am, etc.

III. This is a mixed conjugation. In the present tense, the conjugational endings are attached directly to the verb BASES (as in the I. conjugation). In the past and future tenses, however, a long *vowel* (plus *-j-*) is inserted between them (as in the II. conjugation):

atBILD,-BILDē*j*a,-BILDēs 'answer';	DARa, DAR*ī*ja, DAR*ī*s 'do';
STĀV, STĀVē*j*a, STĀVēs 'stand';	SAKa, SAC*ī*ja, SAC*ī*s 'say';
SĒD, SĒDē*j*a, SĒDēs 'sit';	RĀDa, RĀD*ī*ja, RĀD*ī*s 'show';
GUĻ, GULē*j*a, GULēs 'lie';	LASa, LAS*ī*ja, LAS*ī*s 'read';
	RAKSTā, RAKST*ī*ja, RAKST*ī*s 'write'.

3.2.32 SUBDIVISIONS exist within each of the three conjugations. They are given in your vocabularies right after the principal parts. In the II. and III. conjugations, the subdivisions are named after the vowels that get inserted. In our samples above we have II-o, II-ā & II-ē; III-ē & III-ī verbs.
In the I. conjugation different criteria for subdivisions are used, and we will survey them in the next few lessons. So far we have learned the irregular verbs (labeled "I-irreg."), and now will take up the I. conj. verbs whose present tense patterning is without any problems. They are labeled "I-reg."

a. The II. & III. conj. verbs are patterned regularly in all 3 tenses. The I. conjugation verbs make their forms in a regular fashion only in the past & future tenses. In the present tense most of them have certain divergences that will have to be noted.

3.2.4 MAKING OF THE PRESENT TENSE FORMS in all thre conjugations is done uniformly. First, note the present tense PERSONAL ENDINGS SET:

1st sg. -u	The endings in the parentheses are not used in all instances.
2nd sg. -(i)	The 3rd common ending -a is found only in certain III. conj.
3rd com. -(a)	verbs. It poses no problem, because the 3rd com. form is being
1st pl. -am	memorized as a verb principal part.
2nd pl. -at	Concerning the 2nd person singular ending -i, the following

scheme might be useful: ALL III. conjugation verbs have it.
NO II. conjugation verbs have it.
NO I. conj. regular verbs have it.

The patterns that emerge are distinctive for each division and even subdivision.

3.2.41 EXAMPLES OF THE PRESENT TENSE FORMATION PATTERNS

		I-reg.	II-*o*	II-*ā*	II-*ē*	III-*ē*
1st sg:	es	SKRIENu	DZĪV*oj*u	JAUT*āj*u	KLUS*ēj*u	STĀVu
2nd sg:	tu	SKRIEN	DZĪV*o*	JAUT*ā*	KLUS*ē*	STĀVi
3rd com:	(visi)	SKRIEN	DZĪV*o*	JAUT*ā*	KLUS*ē*	STĀV
1st pl:	mēs	SKRIENam	DZĪV*oj*am	JAUT*āj*am	KLUS*ēj*am	STĀVam
2nd pl:	jūs	SKRIENat	DZĪV*oj*at	JAUT*āj*at	KLUS*ēj*at	STĀVat

In the II. conj. patterns, a -*j*- is inserted to prevent two vowels from fusing and thus making the endings unclear.
Where no ending is present, there is no need for the -*j*, either.

3.2.42 ADDITIONAL III. CONJUGATION PRESENT TENSE PATTERNS.

		III-ē	III-ē	III-ī
1st sg:		SĒDu / SĒŽu	GUļu	DARu
2nd sg:		SĒDi / SĒDi	GULi	DARi
3rd com:		SĒD / SĒŽ	GUļ	DARa
1st pl:		SĒDam / SĒŽam	GUļam	DARām
2nd pl:		SĒDat / SĒŽat	GUļat	DARāt

ALL III-ī verbs follow a single pattern shown on the left.

Note the lengthened -ām, -āt in this pattern.

a. The III-ē verbs with a BASE-END PALATALIZATION (-Ž- & -ļ- in our examples) restore the ORIGINAL CONSONANT (-D- & -L- in our examples) in the 2nd sg. form. The verb sēdēt 'sit' has two versions, of which the palatalized one is more in use.

b. THE LENGTHENED PLURAL ENDINGS -ām & -āt in the III-ī pattern can be thought of as a fusion of the principal part -a and the regular -am, -at short vowel endings: DARa+am = DARām, DARa+at = DARāt.
THE RULE for this lengthening can be: IF THE PRESENT PRINCIPAL PART ALREADY HAS AN -a, THE PLURAL ENDINGS ACQUIRE A LONG -ā-.

3.2.5 THE QUESTION: Kas tas ir? When wishing to know what something is, an English speaker asks: What is this? In Latvian the same question comes out as: 'What is that?' -- Kas tas ir? (NOT Kas *šis ir?) Being a pronoun, tas precedes the verb. Note also that the masculine singular form is used in this type of a general question.

3.2.51 THE ANSWERS TO THIS QUESTION contain predicate nouns (in the nominative case). The subject of the answer sentence is the pronoun tas. Here, however, THE PRONOUN MUST ANTICIPATE THE NOUN IN ITS GENDER AND NUMBER:

Tas ir zēns. 'That is a boy.' Tie ir krēsli. 'Those are chairs.'
Tā ir meitene. 'That is a girl.' Tās ir gultas. 'Those are beds.'

3.2.6 NOTES ON ADJECTIVES

.61 THE LOCATIVE PHRASE Kādā krāsā 'In (translate Of) what color' elicits a color adjective in the answer: Kādā krāsā ir māja? '(Of) what color is the house?' -- Māja ir balta / baltā krāsā. 'The house is white / of white color.'

.62 THE DIMENSION ADJECTIVE MUST COME FIRST when two (or more) adjectives are used together. This is so also in English: **liela, balta māja** 'a big white house', NOT ***balta, liela māja** '*white big house'. NOTE THE COMMA in Latv. betw. any two adjectives placed next to one another.

Šai istabai ir pelēka grīda, bet tajā istabā grīda ir brūna. Abām istabām griesti ir balti. Abās istabās ir skapji. Te, šajā istabā ir melns skapis. Tur, tajā istabā ir dzeltens skapis. Šajā skapī ir grāmatas, bet tajā - trauki. Daudzi trauki ir balti. Grāmatas ir visādās krāsās.

9. Kas tas ir? Tas ir papīrs. Kas tas ir? Tā ir spalva. Un kas ir tas? Tie ir zīmuļi. Tās ir grāmatas. Kāds ir papīrs, spalva, zīmuļi un grāmatas? Papīrs ir plāns. Spalva ir tieva. Daži zīmuļi ir gari, citi īsi. Grāmatas ir smagas un vieglas. Kādā krāsā ir šīs lietas? Papīrs ir balts. Spalva ir melna, bet raksta zilā krāsā. Zīmuļi ir visādās krāsās. Katram zīmulim ir cita krāsa. Šī grāmata ir sarkana. Tās grāmatas tur plauktā ir brūnas. Kuras grāmatas ir smagas? Biezas grāmatas ir smagas. Kādas ir plānas grāmatas? Plānas grāmatas ir vieglas.

Tas..., Tā..., etc. Note how the pronoun must anticipate the nouns in gender and number.

Kāds ir papīrs, etc. The pronoun agrees with the nearest noun in gender and number.

* * *

10. Ko tu te dari? Ko es daru? Es sēžu krēslā un lasu. Tu arī sēdi un lasi. Mēs abi sēžam un lasām. Es tev jautāju. Tu man atbildi. Tu arī jautā man. Es arī atbildu tev. Mēs abi jautājam un atbildam viens otram. Vai arī jūs sēžat krēslos un lasāt? Vai jūs arī jautājat un atbildat? Jā, mēs visi tā darām.

viens otram '(to) one another'

tâ darām 'do so'

11. Ko jūs, bērni, šodien darāt? Pašlaik mēs stāvam virtuvē. Citreiz mēs ejam citās istabās. Dažreiz mēs skrienam augšā un lejā, iekšā un ārā. Mēs skrienam un trokšņojam. Vai jūs kādreiz arī klusējat?

augšā un lejā 'up and down'

Jā, mēs dažreiz guļam. Tad mēs klusējam. Pašlaik tu sēdi un neguli, bet tu klusē. Tagad es rakstu un klusēju. Lūdzu tu arī vairs netrokšņo. Neviens te netrokšņo, tikai tu.

R-3.2 VOCABULARY

NOUNS, masculine:

brunči, -čiem	skirt (plural only)		
spogulis,-lim	mirror	**papīrs, -ram**	paper
vidus, vidum	center, middle	**rakstāmgalds,-dam**	desk

NOUNS, feminine:

drēbe, drēbei	cloth (material)	**vanna, vannai**	bathtub
pl. **drēbes,-ēm**	clothes	**vannas istaba,-ai**	bathroom
bikses, -sēm	pants, trousers (plur.)	**guļamistaba, -bai**	bedroom
veļa, veļai	laundered clothes, linen	**gulta, gultai**	bed
apakšveļa,-ļai	underwear, underclothes	**kumode, kumodei**	chest of drawers
zeķe, zeķei	sock, stocking	**lieta, lietai**	thing, object
krāsa, krāsai	color, hue; paint, dye	**mala, malai**	side, edge

PRONOUNS:

tas, tā	that; it	**kurš, kura**	which, which one; who

ADJECTIVES:

balts, balta	white	**mēlns, mēlna**	black
zils, zila	blue	**dzeltens,-ena**	yellow
zaļš, zaļa	green	**sarkans, -ana**	red
pelēks, -ēka	gray	**brūns, brūna**	brown
visāds, -āda	all kinds of	**oranžs, -anža**	orange
viegls, viegla	light; easy	**smags, smaga**	heavy

VERBS:

skriet: skrien, skrēja, skries	I-reg.	itr: run
trokšņôt: trokšņo, trokšņoja, trokšņôs	II-o	itr: be noisy
klusêt: klusē, klusēja, klusēs	II-ē	itr: be silent, keep quiet
stāvêt: stāv, stāvēja, stāvēs	III-e	itr: stand
sēdêt: sēd/sēž, sēdēja, sēdēs	III-ē	itr: sit
gulêt: guļ, gulēja, gulēs	III-ē	itr: lie (down); sleep
lasît: lasa, lasīja, lasīs	III-ī	tr/itr: read
rakstît: raksta, rakstīja, rakstīs	III-ī	tr/itr: write

ADVERBS:

tur	there	**citreiz**	some other time	**kādreiz**	once; now and then
tā	so, thus	**dažreiz**	sometimes	**diezgan**	enough; rather

ADVERBIAL LOCATIVES:

augšā	upstairs, up	(from	**augša, -ai**	top side)
apakšā	downstairs, below	("	**apakša,-ai**	underside)
lejā	down, downstairs	("	**leja, -ai**	valley)
iekšā	inside, in	("	**iekša, -ai**	the inside)
ārā	outside, out	("	**ārs, āram**	the outdoors)
priekšā	in front of, before	("	**priekša,-ai**	the front)
aizmugurē	in the rear/back	("	**aizmugure,-ei**	the rear/backside)

3.2 SUPPLEMENT: COLOR ADJECTIVES

bāls, -a	*pale*	bālgans, -a *palish, whitish*	pelēks, -a	*gray*	pelēcīgs, -a *grayish*
balts, -a	*white*		raibs, -a	*pied, motley*	
blonds, -a	*blonde*		rozā	*pink (indeclinable)*	
brūns, -a	*brown*	brūngans, -a *brownish*	ruds, -a	*ruddy, reddish-brown, tan (arch.)*	
dzeltens, -a	*yellow*	dzeltenīgs, -a *yellowish*	sarkans, -a	*red*	sarkanīgs, -a *reddish*
gaišs, -a	*light*		sārts, -a	*pink, rosy*	
krāsains, -a	*colorful*		sirms, -a	*gray (ref. to hair only)*	
lillā	*purple (colloq.; indeclinable)*		tumšs, -a	*dark*	
melns, -a	*black*		violets, -a	*violet, purple*	
mēlš, -a	*purple (arch.)*		zaļš, -a	*green*	zaļgans, -a *greenish*
oranžs, -a	*orange*		zils, -a	*blue*	zilgans, -a *blueish*

VIII

LESSON 3.3

TIME AND OBJECT LOCATIVES

PRONOUN tas, tā USED AS 'IT', PLURAL 'THEY'

ADVERBS OF MANNER, THEIR MAKING & USES

MAIN USES OF THE REFLEXIVE VERBS

PRESENT TENSE CONJUGATION OF THE REFLEXIVE VERBS

STRUCTURES WITH ADVERBS OF WELL-BEING

STRUCTURES THAT INDICATE HAVING ON CLOTHING, LIKING / DISLIKING & HAVING AN ACHE

QUESTIONS INTRODUCED BY Kad 'WHEN', Kā 'HOW' & Kāpēc / Kādēļ 'WHY'

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY kad 'WHEN' & jo 'BECAUSE/FOR'

VOCABULARY: MORE CLOTHING ITEMS
PARTS OF THE DAY
A SAMPLE OF REFLEXIVE VERBS
A SAMPLE OF STATE OF BEING ADJECTIVES (AND MANNER ADVERBS MADE FROM THEM)

SUPPLEMENT: CLOTHING ITEMS

3.3 GRAMMAR

3.3.1 ADDITIONAL LOCATIVE USES

3.3.11 TIME LOCATIVES answer the question kad? 'when' and indicate a point in or a period of time: rītā 'in the morning', naktī 'at night', pulksten divos 'at two o'clock'.

a. In this lesson we are learning two types of clock time phrases.

THE NOMINATIVE PHRASE (SENTENCE)	THE LOCATIVE PHRASE
Cik ir pulkstenis? What time is it?	cikos? at what (clock) time?
Pulkstenis ir viens. It is 1 o'clock.	pulksten vienos at 1 o'clock
Pulkstenis ir divi. " " 2 "	pulksten divos " 2 "
Pulkstenis ir trīs. " " 3 "	pulksten trijos " 3 "
Pulkstenis ir četri. " " 4 "	pulksten četros " 4 "
Pulkstenis ir deviņi. " " 9 "	pulksten deviņos " 9 "
Pulkstenis ir desmit. " " 10 "	pulksten desmitos " 10 "
Pulkstenis ir vienpadsmit. 11 "	pulksten vienpadsmitos at 11 o'clock
Pulkstenis ir divpadsmit. 12 "	pulksten divpadsmitos " 12 "

Note that in the locative all clock numerals acquire the ending -os.

b. The word pulksten 'o clock' is an adverb and is used with all the clock phrases that are not in the nominative case.
c. The question: Cik ir pulkstenis? 'What time is it?' must be learned as an idiom, because its literal translation in English would not make much sense.

3.3.12 LOCATIVE OBJECTS. In this lesson we have two verbs skatīties 'to look at' and klausīties 'to listen to' that can take locative objects. Note that in English these two verbs must be followed by prepositions. Jānis skatās pulkstenī. 'J. is looking at the clock.' Anna klausās skolotājā. 'A. is listening to the teacher.'

3.3.13 LOCATIVES OF THE BODY PARTS WITH PIECES OF CLOTHING. In Latvian the expressions of having on pieces of clothing must be followed by the locatives of the body parts to indicate exactly where a particular piece of clothing is on:
Man ir cępure galvā. I have a hat on (my head).
Tev ir krękls mugurā. You have a shirt on (your back).
Viņam bija jaunas bikses kājās. He had new pants on (his legs).
Ingrīdai būs dzęltenas kurpes kājās. I. will have yellow shoes on (her feet).
Vai jums ir cimdi rokās? Do you have the gloves on (your hands)?
a. Note that the possessives my, your, his, her, etc. do not appear in the Latvian sentences, but they must be put in the English translations.

3.3.2 Tas, tā SERVES AS A THIRD PERSON PRONOUN FOR NON-PERSON NOUNS AND MEANS 'IT', PLURAL 'THEY'. Note, however, that the two-gender references are kept intact:

NON-PERSON NOUN:		3RD PERSON PRONOUN	
Galds ir plats.	The table is wide.	Tas ir plats.	It is wide.
Logi ir plati.	The windows are wide.	Tie ir plati.	They are wide.
Grāmata ir bieza.	The book is thick.	Tā ir bieza.	It is thick.
Sienas ir biezas.	The walls are thick.	Tās ir biezas.	They are thick.

Furthermore, this pronoun is used in all other declensional cases:

Mājai ir logi.	The house has windows.	Tai ir logi.	It has windows.
Galdam ir kājas.	The table has legs.	Tam ir kājas.	It has legs.
Te ir krēsls.	Here is a chair.	Tajā sēž zēns.	In it sits a boy.
Kājās ir kurpes.	The shoes are on the feet.	Tajās ir kurpes.	The shoes are on them. Etc.

3.3.3 THE ADVERBS OF MANNER INDICATE HOW THE ACTION IS DONE. They are made from the adjectives that indicate a state of being. In this process, any adjective ending gets replaced by the adverbial ending -i, which corresponds to the English -ly

ADJECTIVES		ADVERBS	
laimīgs	happy-masc.	laimīgi	happily
skaļa	loud-fem.	skaļi	loudly
lępns	proud-masc.	lepni	proudly
priecīga	merry-fem.	priecīgi	merrily

3.3.31 THE MASC. PLURAL -i VERSUS THE ADVERBIAL -i. As we have learned earlier, the nominative plural of the masculine forms also ends in -i. To tell apart this masc. pl. -i from the adverbial -i, you must remember that the plural adjective with -i must go with a masculine plural noun, whereas the adverbial form with -i must refer to some action verb.

ADJECTIVAL USE:	Zēni ir skaļi.	The boys are loud.
ADVERBIAL USE:	Zēni skaļi smejas.	The boys laugh loudly.
BOTH TOGETHER:	Skaļi zēni skaļi smejas.	Loud boys laugh loudly.

3.3.32 THE PLACE OF THE MANNER ADVERB IN THE SENTENCE is next to the verb it modifies, usually preceding the latter (note where the advs. go in English): Zēni skaļi smejas. 'The boys laugh loudly.' Alberts viņiem lępni stāsta. 'A. tells them proudly.'

3.3.33 THE ADVERBS gaiši 'LIGHTLY' AND tumši 'DARKLY' MODIFY COLOR ADJECTIVES. They get translated in English without the adv. ending -ly:

gaiši zils krękls	a light blue shirt	(lit. "lightly" blue)
tumši brūnas kurpes	dark brown shoes	(lit. "darkly" brown)

a. Stripped of its ending -i, the adverb can make a compound with the adjective **gaišzils krekls**, **tumšbrūnas kurpes**; the English translation remains the same.

3.3.4 THE REFLEXIVE VERBS are called "reflexive" because -- in their basic use -- their action returns ("bends back") to its doer. In other words, THE SUBJECT AND THE OBJECT IS THE SAME with such verbs:

Jānis mazgājas.	John washes himself.	(i.e., "John washes John")
Mēs ģērbjamies.	We dress ourselves.	(i.e., "We dress us")
Inese atpūšas.	I. rests herself.	(i.e., "I. rests I.")

In all reflexive verb forms THE FINAL -s MEANS '-SELF' OR '-SELVES', to which the exact pronoun form must be added in English. Other verbs in our sample that have the basic reflexive meanings are: **uzvesties** to behave oneself, **apsēsties** to sit (oneself) down, **apgulties** to lie (lay oneself) down.

3.3.41 OTHER USES OF THE REFLEXIVE VERBS. Only a small percentage of the verbs showing the reflexive forms have clearly reflexive uses. In Modern Latvian the reflexive verbs have developed several other uses, of which our sample shows the following:

a. RECIPROCAL (MUTUAL ACTION) USE:

Meitenes sarunājas.	The girls talk to one another.
Aivars un Ivars skrienas.	A. and I. race one another.

b. INTRANSITIVE USE. When the verb with the active forms has a transitive meaning, the same verb with reflexive forms may be used intransitively:

ACTIVE = TRANSITIVE		REFLEXIVE = INTRANSITIVE	
celt	to lift (something)	**celties**	to get up
sākt	to begin (something)	**sākties**	to begin, get started
beigt	to end (something)	**beigties**	to end, be finished

c. INTENSIVE USE. Often, to intensify the action, the verb is given the reflexive forms:

smieties	to laugh (intensively)
skatīties	to look/gaze at (intentively)
klausīties	to listen (attentively)

d. DESCRIPTIVE (LINKING VERB) USE (rather rare):

atrasties	be situated
izskatīties	look (like)
justies	feel (like)

e. COINING NEW MEANINGS by the use of the reflexive forms (rare occurences):

ACTIVE		REFLEXIVE	
mācīt	to teach	**mācīties**	to learn, study
klausīt	to obey	**klausīties**	to listen
atrast	to find (something)	**atrasties**	be situated

3.3.5 THE CONJUGATION OF THE REFLEXIVE VERBS uses two subsets of the present tense endings:

		SHORT -a-	LONG -ā-
1st sg.	(es)	-os	-os
2nd sg.	(tu)	-ies	-ies
3rd com.	(visi)	-as	-ās
1st pl.	(mes)	-amies	-āmies
2nd pl.	(jus)	-aties	-āties

The present tense principal part (3rd com. person) already indicates which subset is to be used: THE SAME TYPE OF -a- THAT THE 3RD PERSON HAS IS CONTINUED IN THE PLURAL FORMS ALSO.

3.3.51 EXAMPLES OF THE REFLEXIVE VERB PRESENT TENSE CONJUGATION

	I-reg.	II-ā	III-ī
1st sg. es	skrienos	mazgājos	mācos
2nd sg. tu	skrienies	mazgājies	mācies
3rd cm.visi	skrienas	mazgājas	mācās
1st pl. mēs	skrienamies	mazgājamies	mācāmies
2nd pl. jūs	skrienaties	mazgājaties	mācāties

I. Like skrienas, the verbs smejas, jūtas (& atrodas) are conjugated.
II. Like mazgājas, the verbs (sa)runājas & spēlējas are conjugated.
III. Like mācās, the verbs klausās, skatās & izskatās are conjugated.
The verb atrodas is seldom conjugated, and the verbs sākas un beidzas -- practically never.

3.3.52 VERBS WITH CHANGES IN THE 2ND SG. BASE ENDS

	I-ļ/l	I-ž/d	I-š/t	I-bj/b
1st sg. es	ceļos	sēžos	atpūšos	ģērbjos
2nd sg. tu	celies	sēdies	atpūties	ģērbies
3rd cm.visi	ceļas	sēžas	atpūšas	ģērbjas
1st pl. mēs	ceļamies	sēžamies	atpūšamies	ģērbjamies
2nd pl. jūs	ceļaties	sēžaties	atpūšaties	ģērbjaties

Like ceļas, also the verb (ap)guļas is conjugated.
The first three verbs RESTORE THE ORIGINAL CONSONANT at the base end of the second person singular form.
In the last verb, the 2nd sg. form drops the -j- at the base end after the labial consonant -b-.
Note that the classifications of these verbs refer to the base end changes mentioned and shown above. About similar occurences in III-e verbs see 3.2.42.

3.3.6 NEW IDIOMATIC STRUCTURES TO LEARN:

3.3.61 TO LIKE / DISLIKE: patikt / nepatikt. These expressions are structured with the logical subject in the dative and the object in the nominative case. The verb remains in the 3rd person.
Man patīk Jānis. I like John. (LIT: "John pleases me.")
Vai tev patīk zēni? Do you like boys? ("Do boys please you?")
Jānim nepatika skolotāja. John did not like the teacher. ("Teach.didn't please J.")
Jums patiks šī grāmata. You will like this book. ("This book'll please you.")
a. When the 1st or 2nd person pronoun is used in the nominative case, the verb gets conjugated: Es patīku Jānim. "I please John. / I am pleasing to John." which means: 'John likes me.'

3.3.62 TO SUIT - piestāvēt:
Tev piestāv gaišas drēbes. Light(-colored) clothing suits you.
Vai šī blūze man piestāvēs? Will this blouse suit me?
Īsi mati viņai nepiestāvēja. Short hair did not become/suit her.

3.3.63 TO ACHE / HAVE AN ACHE - sāpēt:
Man galva sāp. I have a headache. / My head aches.
Viņai sāpēja mugura. She had a backache. / Her back ached.
Rīt tev nekas nesāpēs. Tomorrow you will have no ache(s). / Tomorrow nothing will ache for you.

TO HAVE ON CLOTHING - see 3.3.13 above.

3.3.7 NEW SENTENCES

.71 TIME QUESTIONS. General questions are introduced by **Kad** 'When':

Q: **Kad tu celies?** When do you get up?
A: **Es ceļos rītā.** I get up in the morning.
Q: **Kad beidzās stundas?** When did the lessons end?
A: **Stundas beidzās pēcpusdienā.** The lessons ended in the afternoon.
Q: **Kad visi gulēs?** When will everybody sleep?
A: **Visi gulēs naktī.** All will sleep at night.

a. The more specific CLOCK TIME QUESTIONS are introduced by **Cikos** 'At what time':
Cikos tu celies? At what time do you get up?
Es ceļos pulksten astoņos. I get up at eight o`clock.
Cikos beidzās stundas? At what time did the lessons end?
Stundas beidzās pulksten trijos. The lessons ended at three o`clock.

For this see more in 3.3.11-a.&b.; for **Cik ir pulkstenis?** see 3.3.11-a .&c.

.72 TIME CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY **Kad** structurally are exactly like the **Kad**-questions (whereas in English note the word order differences):

QUESTION: **Kad beidzās stundas?** When did the lessons end?
CLAUSE: **Kad beidzās stundas, bērni gāja mājās.** When the lessons ended, the children went home.

Also, it can follow the main clause: **Bērni gāja mājās, kad beidzās stundas.**

.73 ADVERB OF MANNER QUESTIONS are introduced by **Kā** 'How':

Kā tu sēdi klasē? How do you sit in the class(room)?
Es sēžu klusi un mierīgi. I sit quietly and calmly.
Kā meitenes sarunājas? How do the girls talk to one another?
Viņas sarunājas skaļi. They talk loudly to one another.
Kā Inese jutās? How did Inese feel?
Inese jutās slikti. I. felt ill/unwell. (See also 3.3.3)

a. This adverbial particle **kā** is pronounced with the broken pitch: [kâ], but is spelled the same as the possessive genitive form **kā** 'whose', which has the even pitch.

.74 REASON QUESTIONS are introduced by **Kāpēc/Kādēļ** 'Why'. They can be answered only by a whole clause (or a simple sentence). The reason clause is often introduced by the particle **jo** 'for, because'. Like the for-clause in English, the jo-clause can only follow the main clause:

Kāpēc tu izskaties tik nelaimīga? Why do you look so unhappy?
Es izskatos nelaimīga, jo es nejūtos labi. I look unhappy for I do not feel well.

a. Both **kāpēc** & **kādēļ** mean the same, and which of them to use is a personal choice.

3.3.8 ADDITIONAL POINTS

a. In Latvian all dependent clauses get separated from the main clauses by a comma regardless of their types or positions. Esp. see the last sentences in .72 & .74, where you wouldn't use commas in English.
b. The noun **brīdis** (& **starpbrīdis**) has a base-end **-ž-** in the plural forms: **brīži, brīžiem, brīžos.** Similarily, the noun **pulkstenis** changes the base-end **-n-** to **-ņ-** in plural: **pulksteņi, pulksteņiem, pulksteņos.**
c. Borrowed nouns that end in **-o**, like **radio**, are indeclinable - they keep the same **-o** in all declensional cases. Their modifiers, however, must have their regular masculine gender suffixes: **jauns radio** 'new radio (set)', **jaunam radio** 'for a new radio', **jaunā radio** 'in a new radio', **jauni radio** 'new radio sets', etc.

R - 3.3 READING

KĀ TU UZVEDIES STUNDĀS?

1. Es ceļos pulksten septiņos rītā. Tad es mazgājos un ģērbjos. Pulksten deviņos es jau esmu skolā. Es ieeju klasē un apsēžos. Stunda sākas. Es skatos grāmatā un klausos skolotājā. Kad skolotāja man jautā, es viņai atbildu. Es arī lasu, rakstu un mācos. Tad stunda beidzas, un mums ir starpbrīdis.

2. Stundās mēs sēžam mierīgi un klusējam. Starpbrīžos mēs priecīgi sarunājamies, skaļi smejamies un trokšņojam. Kad atkal sākas stunda, mēs ejam klasē un atkal uzvedamies kārtīgi. Tā mēs mācāmies diezgan ilgi. Mums ir ilgas stundas. Parasti stundas beidzas tikai pulksten trijos.

3. Cikos tu celies? Es ceļos pulksten astoņos. Vai tu tūlīt mazgājies un ģērbies? Jā, es tūliņ tā daru. Ko tu dari priekšpusdienā? Tad es esmu skolā. Kad tu ieej klasē un apsēdies, vai tu vēl sarunājies un trokšņo? Nē, klasē es sēžu klusi un mierīgi. Tur es esmu klusa un mierīga. Vai tu skaties grāmatā un klausies skolotājā? Diezgan bieži es arī skatos pulkstenī, kad beigsies stunda. Vai tu atpūties starpbrīdī? Nē, tad es skrienu, smejos un trokšņoju. Parasti es atpūšos mājās.

4. Vai arī pēcpusdienā jūs vēl esat skolā un mācāties? Jā, mēs vēl tur esam un mācāmies.

stundās 'during the lessons'

ieeju 'I walk into'

klausos skolotājā: locative object - see 3.3.12

mierīgi - priecīgi - skaļi: adverbs of manner (how?)

diezgan ilgi 'for a quite long time'
ilgas stundas 'long lessons'

tā daru 'I do so'

sēžu klusi: action vb.+adv. 'I sit quietly'
esmu klusa: linking vb.+adj. 'I am quiet'

mājās 'at home'

mēs vēl tur esam 'we are still there'

Vai jūs labi uzvedaties - klausāties skolotājā un nesarunājaties un nesmejaties? Nē, klasē mēs nesarunājamies. Bet, kad skolotāja runā ļoti ilgi, mēs vairs viņā neklausāmies. Tad mēs skatāmies pulksteņos, ne grāmatās un burtnīcās. Kad jūs ejat mājās? Parasti mēs ejam mājās pulksten trijos, bet dažreiz arī divos vai pat vienos. Vai jūs atpūšaties mājās? Jā, mēs atpūšamies, bet mēs arī spēlējamies. Dažreiz Aivars un Ivars skrienas, un mēs viņos skatāmies un smejamies. Ko jūs darāt, kad nāk vakars? Vakarā mēs skatāmies televizijā vai klausāmies radio un mācāmies. Naktī mēs guļam un labi atpūšamies.

divos/vienos: **pulksten divos**, etc. is understood

nāk vakars: the subject after verb for emphasis
skatāmies televizijā 'we watch television'

* * *

5. Kad Ingrīda ienāca klasē, viņai bija gara, sarkana kleita mugurā un tumši sarkanas kurpes kājās. Citas meitenes viņai jautāja: "Ingrīd, kadēļ tu esi sarkanā kleitā un kurpēs?" "Man patīk sarkanas kleitas, sevišķi šī," Ingrīda viņām atbildēja. "Vai jums mana kleita nepatīk?" Meitenes viņai sacīja: "Varbūt tev tādas kleitas patīk, bet šī kleita tev noteikti nepiestāv."

ienāca 'came into, entered'

mugurā, kājās: translate these locatives with 'on', not their full meaning

sevišķi šī 'specially this one'

tev noteikti nepiestāv 'definitely does not suit you'

6. Tad klasē ienāca Kristīne. Tajā rītā viņai bija balta blūze un zaļi brunči mugurā, gaišbrūnas zeķes un tumšbrūnas kurpes kājās.

ienāca Kristīne: again, the subject is at the end of the sentence for emphasis

"Kā jums patīk manas drēbes?" Kristīne jautā. "Šodien tās ir visādās krāsās, bet rīt tās būs tikai dzeltenas: dzeltena kleita, dzeltenas zeķes un kurpes. Man būs pat dzeltens mētelis mugurā, dzeltena cepure galvā un dzelteni cimdi rokās. Man piestāv visas krāsas."

kā jums patīk 'how do you like'
tās 'they' - ref. to clothes

7. Beidzot klasē ienāca Alberts. Parasti viņam ir vecas drēbes mugurā, bet tajā dienā tās bija jaunas. Albertam bija zils krekls mugurā. Tas bija jauns. Viņam bija arī tumši pelēka žakete mugurā. Arī tā bija jauna. Viņam bija gaiši pelēkas bikses, tumšas zeķes un melnas kurpes kājās. Tās arī izskatījās jaunas. Alberts izskatījās ļoti lepns. Viņš lepni skatījās zēnos. Tāpat zēni ziņkārīgi skatījās Albertā. Beidzot viņi skaļi smējās un jautāja: "Albert, kāpēc šodien tev ir jaunas drēbes mugurā? Kādēļ tu izskaties tik lepns?" "Es nejūtos lepns, tikai priecīgs," Alberts zēniem atbildēja. "Man ir jaunas drēbes mugurā, jo šodien ir mana dzimšanas diena. Parastā dienā man ir vecas drēbes, bet dzimšanas dienā jaunas."

tajā dienā 'on that day'
tas 'it'
arī tā 'it too'
tās 'they'
here ziņkārīgi & skaļi modify verbs
dzimšanas diena 'birthday'
parastā dienā 'on an ordinary day'

8. Parasti meitenes ir priecīgas un skaļas. Viņas priecīgi un skaļi sarunājas. Šajā pēcpusdienā Inese ir neparasti klusa un skumja. Viņa klusi sēž un skumji skatās sienā. Skolotāja viņai jautā: "Kāpēc tu izskaties tik nelaimīga? Kā tu jūties?" "Es jūtos diezgan slikti," Inese atbild, "jo man sāp galva un kakls."

diezgan slikti 'rather unwell' (note the adv. form)

"Vai tev galva sāpēja jau rītā?" skolotāja jautā. "Nē, priekšpusdienā man vēl nekas nesāpēja," viņai stāsta Inese. Beidzot skolotāja saka Inesei: "Tagad tu ej mājās, apgulies un atpūties. Varbūt jau vakarā tev nekas vairs nesāpēs, un atkal viss būs labi."

nekas nesāpēja 'nothing (did) hurt'

apgulies 'lie down'

viss būs labi 'everything will be all right'

* * *

9. Šis zēns ir tievs. Viņš ir tievs. Šis koks ir tievs. Tas ir tievs. Šie zēni ir skaļi. Viņi ir skaļi. Šie koki ir zaļi. Tie ir zaļi. Šī meitene ir gara; viņa ir gara. Šī kleita ir gara; tā ir gara. Šīs skolnieces ir klusas; viņas ir klusas. Šīs mājas ir augstas; tās ir augstas.

Viņš/viņa 'he/she' vs. tas/tā 'it'; note that they differ also in the plural although you translate both as 'they' in English.

gara: say 'tall' for persons, 'long' for things

10. Bērnam ir kājas; viņam ir kājas. Galdam ir kājas; tam ir kājas. Meitenēm ir pirksti; viņām ir pirksti. Rokām ir pirksti; tām ir pirksti. Zēni skatās Albertā; zēni viņā skatās. Vai tu skaties grāmatā? Vai tu tajā skaties? Annai piestāv zili brunči. Viņai tie piestāv. Tajos viņa izskatās ļoti labi.

tie/tajos: say 'it / in it', for "skirt" is sg. in E.
ļoti labi 'very well'

3.3 VOCABULARY

MASCULINE NOUNS:

rīts, rītam	morning
vakars, vakaram	evening
brīdis, brīdim	moment, while
starpbrīdis,-dim	intermission
pulkstenis, -nim	clock, watch
radio	radio set (see 3.3.8-c.)
mētelis, mētelim	overcoat
cimds, cimdam	glove
krekls, kreklam	shirt

PRONOUN:

nekas	nothing

FEMININE NOUNS:

nakts, naktij	night
diena, dienai	day
pusdiena,-nai	midday, noon
priekšpusdiena,-nai	forenoon
pēcpusdiena,-dienai	afternoon
stunda, stundai	hour; lesson
klase, klasei	class, classroom
kleita, kleitai	dress
blūze, blūzei	blouse
kurpe, kurpei	shoe
cepure, cepurei	hat
žakete, žaketei	jacket

A D J E C T I V E S:

lepns, lepna	proud
skaļš, skaļa	loud, noisy
kluss, klusa	silent, still
skumjš, skumja	sad
priecīgs, -īga	joyful, cheery, merry
laimīgs, -īga	lucky; happy
mierīgs, -īga	calm, quiet
kārtīgs, -īga	orderly, neat
uzmanīgs, -īga	careful; attentive
ziņkārīgs,-īga	inquisitive, curious
noteikts, -ta	definite; firm
parasts, -ta	usual, ordinary
sevišķs, -išķa	particular, special
ilgs, ilga	long lasting
tumšs, tumša	dark
gaišs, gaiša	light (in hue)
(labs, laba	good - 3.1)
(slikts, slikta	bad - 3.1)

ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES: (see 3.3.3)

lepni	proudly
skaļi	loudly, noisily
klusi	silently
skumji	sadly
priecīgi	merrily, joyfully
laimīgi	luckily; happily
mierīgi	calmly, quietly
kārtīgi	neatly
uzmanīgi	carefully
ziņkārīgi	inquisitively
noteikti	definitely
parasti	usually
sevišķi	especially
ilgi	for a long time
tumši	darkly
gaiši	lightly
labi	well, all right
slikti	badly; unwell, ill

OTHER ADVERBS:

bieži	often, frequently
beidzot	finally, at last
tūlīt / tūliņ	right away, at once
pulksten	o'clock
tik	so (with adjs. & advs.)
pat	even, just

INTRODUCTORY PARTICLES:

kā	how, in what manner
kad	when
cikos	at what (clock) time
kāpēc / kādēļ	why
jo	for, because

V E R B S:

patikt: patīk, patika, patiks	I-k/c	itr/tr: be pleasing, like
celties: ceļas, cēlās, celsies	I-ļ/l	itr: rise, get up
(ap)gulties: guļas, gūlās, gulsies *	I-ļ/l	itr: lie down
(ap)sēsties: sēžas, sēdās, sēdīsies *	I-ž/d	itr: sit down
ģērbties: ģērbjas, ģērbās, ģērbsies	I-bj/b	itr: dress oneself, get dressed
smieties: smejas, smējās, smiesies	I-reg	itr: laugh
skrieties: skrienas, skrējās, skriesies	I-reg	itr: race (one another)
atpūsties: atpūšas, atpūtās, atpūtīsies	I-š/t	itr: rest (up)
uzvesties: uzvedas, uzvedās, uzvedīsies	I-reg	itr: behave
sākties: sākas, sākās, sāksies . . .	I-k/c	itr: begin, get started
beigties: beidzas, beidzās, beigsies	I-reg.	itr: end, be finished
runāt: runā, runāja, runās	II-ā	tr/itr: talk
(sa)runāties: runājas, runājās, runāsies *	II-ā	itr: talk to one another, chat
mazgāties: mazgājas, mazgājās, mazgāsies	II-ā	itr: wash oneself, wash up
spēlēties: spēlējas, spēlējās, spēlēsies	II-ē	itr: play (games)
skatīties: skatās, skatījās, skatīsies	III-ī	itr/tr: look (at)
klausīties: klausās, klausījās, klausīsies	III-ī	itr/tr: listen (to)
piestāvēt: piestāv, piestāvēja, piestāvēs	III-ē	itr: suit, become, fit
sāpēt: sāp, sāpēja, sāpēs	III-ē	itr: ache, have an ache, hurt

* these verbs are often used with the prefixes that you see in the brackets

N U M E R A L S:

vienpadsmit	eleven
divpadsmit	twelve

(Like desmit '10', these numerals are indeclinable.)

3.3 SUPPLEMENT: ITEMS OF CLOTHING AND FOOTWEAR

apavi, -iem *footwear*
apkakle, -ei *collar*
apmetnis, -im *cape, cloak*
aproce, -ei *cuff (of a shirt)*
atloks, -am *cuff (of pants)*
auskars, -am *earring*
bikses, -ēm *pants, slacks*
  apakšbikses *underdrawers*
  peldbikses *swim trunks*
bikšturi, -iem *suspenders*
blūze, -ei *blouse*
cepure, -ei *hat*
cimds, -am *glove, mitten*
čība, -ai *slipper*
drēbe, -ei *cloth*
drēbes, -ēm *clothing*
galošas, -ām *galoshes, rubbers*
gredzens, -am *ring*
(ap)ģērbs, -am *attire, clothing*
jaka, -ai *sweater, jacket*
josta, -ai *belt*
kabata, -ai *pocket*
kaklasaite, -ei *necktie*
kaklauts, -am *scarf, ascot*
kapuce, -ei *hood*
kleita, -ai *dress*
  apakškleita *slip*
  vakarkleita *evening gown*
kostīms, -am *woman's suit*
  peldkostīms *bathing suit*
krekls, -am *shirt*
  apakškrekls *undershirt*
  naktskrekls *night shirt/gown*
krūšturis, -im *brassiere*
kurpe, -ei *shoe*
ķitelis, -im *overall*
lakats, -am *kerchief, scarf*
  kabatas lakats *handkerchief*
lietussargs, -am *umbrella*
mataukla, -ai *hair ribbon*
mētelis, -im *coat*
  lietus mētelis *raincoat*
  rītamētelis *dressing gown, robe*
parūka, -ai *wig*
pidžama, -ai *pajamas*
piedurkne, -ei *sleeve*
poga, -ai *button*
  aproču poga *cuff link*
priekšauts, -am *apron*
rāvējslēdzējs, -am *zipper*
rokassoma, -ai *handbag*
rota, -ai *ornament*
  kakla rota *necklace*
rotaslieta, -ai *piece of jewelry*
sandale, -ei *sandal*
sprādze, -ei *clasp, clip*
  rokas sprādze *bracelet*
svārki, -iem *1. suit jacket*
  2. skirt
šalle, -ei *shawl*
taurinš, -am *bow tie (butterfly)*
tērps, -am *outfit, costume*
tupele, -ei *slipper*
  koka tupele *clog*
uniforma, -ai *uniform*
uzvalks, -am *man's suit*
veļa, -ai *laundry*
  apakšveļa *underwear*
veste, -ei *vest*
zābaks, -am *boot*
zeķe, -ei *sock, stocking*
zeķturis, -im *garter*
žakete, -ei *sports jacket*

UNIT FOUR

LESSONS 4.1 & 4.2 (IX & X)

LEARNING THE ACCUSATIVE CASE, DIMINUTIVES
AND THE PAST TENSE CONJUGATION

GRAMMAR

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE: ITS FORMATION & USES

THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR PREPOSITION SET

DIRECT, INFINITIVE & PREPOSITIONAL OBJECTS

THE DIMINUTIVES: THEIR FORMATION & USE

THE USES OF viss, sev-/savs, pats & DOUBLE PRONOUNS

THE IMPERATIVE FORMS

THE 2ND SG. DEVIATIONS IN THE PRESENT TENSE

THE PAST TENSE CONJUGATION

OBJECT AND RELATIVE CLAUSES

STRUCTURES WITH garšot, veikties, iet, likties

VOCABULARY:

SOME FOODS, DRINKS, TABLEWARE

SOME SCHOOL TERMINOLOGY

DAYS OF THE WEEK

DIRECTIONAL PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERB PHRASES

SUPPLEMENTS

FOODS AND DRINKS

TABLEWARE AND COOKWARE

DECLENSION CHART WITH THE ACCUSATIVES ADDED

CONJUGATION SHEETS FOR SEPARATE VERBS

IX

LESSON 4.1

LEARNING THE ACCUSATIVE CASE
SUMMING UP THE PRESENT TENSE

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE: ITS FORMATION &
ITS USE AS THE DIRECT OBJECT (.1)

THE INFINITIVES AS OBJECTS AND TAKING OBJECTS (.2)

THE USE OF savs, -va 'ONE'S OWN' AND sev- '-SELF' (.3)

COMPLETE SURVEY OF THE PRESENT TENSE 2ND SG. FORM CHANGES (.4)

THE IMPERATIVE FORMS, ACTIVE & REFLEXIVE (.5)

PALATALIZATION SUMMARY FOR NOUNS AND VERBS (.6)

WORD ORDER CHANGES FOR STYLISTIC PURPOSES (.7)

Ko-QUESTIONS AND THEIR ANSWERS (.81)
STRUCTURES WITH THE VERB garšot (.82)

USES & MEANINGS OF THE PRONOUN viss (.91)
PRELIMINARY NOTES ON VERB PREFIXES (.93)

VOCABULARY: SOME FOODS, DRINKS, TABLEWARE
REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS
TEMPERATURE ADJECTIVES & ADVERBS
A SAMPLE OF TRANSITIVE VERBS

SUPPLEMENTS: FOODS AND DRINKS
TABLE AND COOKWARE

DECLENSION CHART UPDATED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE FORMS

CONJUGATION WORK SHEETS INTRODUCED

4.1 GRAMMAR:

4.1.1 THE ACCUSATIVE CASE IS THE DIRECT OBJECT CASE. It answers the question ko? 'whom?/what?' In English its function is indicated by its position after the verb. In Latvian distinct case forms are used.
The accusative case forms of the nouns are made by means of the accusative case suffixes in the following ways:

4.1.11 IN THE SINGULAR WATCH THE STEM VOWEL FOR THE CHOICE OF -i OR -u:

THE HIGH STEMS (e & i) TAKE THE HIGHEST VOWEL -i:

māte, mātei	ac. sg.	māti	mother
acs, acij	ac. sg.	aci	eye
brālis, brālim	a.s.	brāli	brother

THE LOW STEMS (a & u) TAKE THE LOWEST VOWEL -u:

māsa, māsai	ac. sg.	māsu	sister
zēns, zēnam	ac. sg.	zēnu	boy
ledus, ledum	. .	ledu	ice

c. the 2nd sg. changes the base-end -k- & -g- into -c- & -dz-;
d. the 2nd sg. changes the pronunciation of the verb base -e-/-ē-.

Except for the last (d.) change, these OPPOSITIONS ARE THE BASIS FOR THE VERB SUBGROUP CLASSIFICATIONS THAT APPEAR IN THE CODE. Thus the code 'I-š/s' (as for the verb plest 'break') means that this I. conjugation verb in the present tense opposes the 2nd. sg. base-end -s- to -š- in all other persons. Other code designations referring to the oppositions outlined above are just as easy to read.

4.1.41 THE 2ND SG. RESTORES THE NONPALATAL BASE-END CONSONANTS -s-, -t-, -z-, -d-, -l- (and -r-):

	'tear'	'blow'	'cut'	'let'	'lift'	'drink'
	I-š/t	I-š/t	I-ž/z	I-ž/d	I-ļ/l	(I-ŗ/r
1st sg.	plēšu	pūšu	griežu	laižu	ceļu	dzeŗu
2ND SG.	plēs	pūt	griez	laid	cel	dzer
3rd com.	plēš	pūš	griež	laiž	ceļ	dzeŗ
1st pl.	plēšam	pūšam	griežam	laižam	ceļam	dzeŗam
2nd pl.	plēšat	pūšat	griežat	laižat	ceļat	dzeŗat)

a. The restored consonant is the same one that is seen in the past and future tenses: 2.sg.pres. pūt - past pr. part pūta, fut. pūtīs.
b. In Latvia the ŗ is no longer used; there the code for the verbs like dzert must be 'I-reg.'

4.1.42 THE 2ND SG. DROPS -j- AFTER THE LABIAL BASE-END CONSONANTS -p-, -b-, -m-:

	'climb'	'dress'	'push'	(BUT -j- ALONE MUST STAY: 'pour' I-reg.
	I-pj/p	I-bj/b	I-mj/m	
1st sg.	kāpju	ģērbju	stumju	leju
2ND SG.	kāp	ģērb	stum	lej
3rd com.	kāpj	ģērbj	stumj	lej
1st pl.	kāpjam	ģērbjam	stumjam	lejam
2nd pl.	kāpjat	ģērbjat	stumjat	lejat)

4.1.43 THE 2ND SG. CHANGES THE BASE-END -k- AND -g- TO -c- AND -dz- RESPECTIVELY:

	'put'	'grow'
	I-k/c	I-g/dz
1st sg.	lieku	augu
2ND SG.	liec	audz
3rd com.	liek	aug
1st pl.	liekam	augam
2nd pl.	liekat	augat

4.1.44 THE 2ND SG. CHANGES THE PRESENT TENSE BASE BROAD -ę-/-ē̦- INTO THE NORMAL -e-/-ē-:

	'pull'	'eat'
	I-k/c	I-reg.
1st sg.	vęlku	ē̦du
2ND SG.	velc	ēd
3rd com.	vęlk	ē̦d
1st pl.	vęlkam	ē̦dam
2nd pl.	vęlkat	ē̦dat

a. This opposition appears only in the pronunciation, not in the spelling. For this reason it is ignored in the code designations that stress other features.
b. All the above oppositions are present in the reflexive verbs also, a partial sample of which see in 3.3.52; note the code designations there. We don't as yet have as complete a sample of reflexive verbs as we have here of the active verbs.

All the active verbs on this page share one feature with the I. conjugation regular verbs: their present tense 2ND SG. FORM HAS NO SUFFIX. There is, however, a large group of the I. conjugation verbs whose present tense 2nd. sg. form takes the ending -i. Now we are ready to take up that category.

4.1.45 THE VERBS WITH THE PRESENT TENSE BASE-END -st- ADD -i TO THEIR 2ND SG. FORM:

	'become' I-st	'recognize' I-st
1st sg.	kļūstu	pazīstu
2nd sg.	kļūsti	pazīsti
3rd com.	kļūst	pazīst
1st pl.	kļūstam	pazīstam
2nd pl.	kļūstat	pazīstat

a. Now it can be said concerning the present tense 2nd sg. -i:
All III. conjugation verbs have it.
No II. conjugation verbs have it.
The I. conjugation -st-verbs have it.
The rest of the I. conjugation verbs don´t have it.

4.1.5 **THE IMPERATIVE.** The verb forms we have studied sofar are of the s.c. indicative mood, which is used in statements and questions. Besides that, **direct orders can be given** to the 2nd person to do something. The last mode (or "mood") of action is the imperative.

There are two imperative forms - 2nd sg. & 2nd pl. - for the active and two for the reflexive verbs. The 2nd sg. imperative forms, active and reflexive, are the same as the 2nd sg. indicative forms. The 2nd pl. imperative forms are made from the SINGULAR forms with the **ACTIVE SUFFIX -iet** and the **REFLEXIVE SUFFIX -ieties.** If the verbs belong to the special patterns shown in 4.1.41 through .44 or in 3.3.52, **all of their imperative forms show the special feature** that only the 2nd person singular has in the indicative.

4.1.51 ACTIVE VERB IMPERATIVE EXAMPLES:

	INDICAT. 2nd sg.	IMPERATIVE 2.sg.	2nd pl.			INDICAT. 2nd sg.	IMPERATIVE 2.sg.	2nd pl.	
I-irreg.	tu esi	esi!	esiet!	be!	I-š/s	tu plēs	plēs!	plēsiet!	tear!
I-irreg.	tu ej	ej!	ejiet!	go!	I-š/t	tu pūt	pūt!	pūtiet	blow!
I-reg.	tu ēd	ēd!	ēdiet!	eat!	I-ž/z	tu griez	griez!	griezīet!	cut!
I-reg.	tu lej	lej!	lejiet!	pour!	I-ž/d	tu laid	laid!	laidiet	let!
I-reg.	tu skrien	skrien!	skrieniet!	run!	I-ļ/l	tu cel	cel!	celiet!	lift!
I-st	tu kļūsti	kļūsti!	kļūstiet!	become!	I-pj/p	tu kāp	kāp!	kāpiet!	climb!
II-o	tu dzīvo	dzīvo!	dzīvojiet!	live!	I-bj/b	tu ģērb	ģērb!	ģērbiet!	dress!
II-ā	tu jautā	jautā!	jautājiet!	ask!	I-mj/m	tu stum	stum!	stumiet!	push!
II-ē	tu klusē	klusē!	klusējiet!	hush!	I-k/c	tu liec	liec!	liediet!	put!
III-ī	tu slauki	slauki!	slaukiet!	wipe!	I-g/dz	tu audz	audz!	audziet!	grow!
III-ī	tu lasi	lasi!	lasiet!	read!	III-ē	tu guli	guli!	guliet!	sleep!
III-ē	tu stāvi	stāvi!	stāviet!	stand!	III-ē	tu sēdi	sēdi!	sēdiet!	sit!

4.1.52 REFLEXIVE VERB IMPERATIVE EXAMPLES:

	INDICATIVE 2nd sg.	IMPERATIVE 2nd. sg.	2nd plural	
I-reg.	tu skrieniies	skrieniies!	skrieniieties!	race!
I-reg.	tu nesmejies	nesmejies!	nesmejieties!	don´t laugh!
I-ļ/l	tu celies	celies!	celieties!	get up!
I-š/t	tu atpūties	atpūties!	atpūtieties!	rest!
I-ž/z	tu griezies	griezies!	griezieties!	turn yourself/-selves!
I-ž/d	tu sēdies	sēdies!	sēdieties!	sit down!
I-bj/b	tu ģērbies	ģērbies!	ģērbieties!	dress yourself/-selves!
II-ā	tu mazgājies	mazgājies!	mazgājieties!	wash yourself/-selves!
II-ē	tu spēlējies	spēlējies!	spēlējieties!	play games!
III-ī	tu mācies	mācies!	mācieties!	study! / learn!
III-ī	tu slaukies	slaukies!	slaukieties!	wipe yourself/-selves dry!

We don´t have as complete a sample of the reflexive verbs as we have of the active verbs.

a. Note that in the III-ī pattern the base-end -k- stays unchanged: act. **slauki/ /slaukiet**, refl. **slaukies/slaukieties.**

4.1.6 A SUMMARY OF PALATALIZATION AND IOTIZATION PATTERNS

We already have met a number of I. conjugation verbs and masculine i-stem nouns that either palatalize their base-ends or add add a -j- in some of their forms. This summary of all such changes will now provide a unified overview.

4.1.61 **BASE-END PALATALIZATIONS** occur in the **present tense** of certain I. conjugation verbs (see 4.1.41) and in the **plural** forms of certain masculine i-stem nouns (see 2.2.14b. and 3.3.74b.).

CHANGES:	I. CONJ. VERBS: 2.sg.	3.com.		i-STEM NOUNS: nom. & dat. sg.	nom. plural	
s to š:	plēs	- plēš	tear	(kāsis, kāsim	-- kāši	hooks)
t to š:	pūt	- pūš	blow	(latvietis, -tim	- latvieši	Latvians)
z to ž:	griez	- griež	cut	nazis, nazim	-- naži	knives
d to ž:	laid	- laiž	let	brīdis, brīdim	-- brīži	moments
l to ļ:	cel	- ceļ	lift	brālis, brālim	-- brāļi	brothers
(r to ŗ:	dzer	- dzeŗ	drink	(būris, būrim	-- būŗi	cages)
n to ņ:	(no verb examples)			pulkstenis, -enim	-- pulkstenī	clocks

a. Since we will not be using the ŗ, the r/ŗ opposition is put here only "for the record".

b. In the nouns we have not yet encountered some of the oppositions.

4.1.62 **BASE-END IOTIZATIONS** occur in the same verb and noun forms **that cannot palatalize**. These are the forms that have a labial consonant at the end of their bases. **They add a -j- after the labial** (see 4.1.42 and 3.1.23).

ADD -j-:	I. CONJ. VERBS: 2.sg.	3.com.		i-STEM NOUNS: nom. & dat.sg.	nom. plural	
p vs. pj:	kāp	- kāpj	climb	skapis, skapim	-- skapji	cupboards
b vs. bj:	ģērb	- ģērbj	dress	(knābis, knābim	-- knābji	beaks)
m vs. mj:	stum	- stumj	push	(kurmis, kurmim	-- kurmji	moles)
v vs. vj:	(no verb examples)			šķīvis, šķīvim	-- šķīvji	plates

Again, in the nouns we have not yet encountered all oppositions.
In the nouns we will later learn other instances of the palatalization and iotization.

4.1.7 **WORD ORDER CHANGES FOR STYLISTIC PURPOSES.** The subject-verb-object sequence must be maintained to indicate these syntactic relationships in English, but not in Latvian. Latvian may follow this pattern, but is NOT BOUND to it. Two facts are important here to consider:

A. In Latvian the declensional suffixes, not the word order, indicate which is the subject and which the object of the sentence. This means that the word order here is grammatically unimportant and hence can be changeable.

B. The Latvian sentence has its strongest stress on the last word. This means that any sentence element (except function particles) can be brought to the end of the sentence to receive an emphasis. (See also 2.2.3)

Let's look at some examples (the stressed element is underlined):

S-V-O: Es dzeru tēju. I drink tea. OR: It's the tea that I drink.
O-V-S: Tēju dzeru es. It is I who drink tea.
O-S-V: Tēju es dzeru. I do drink tea.

Such inversions are preferred especially if the sentece continues with some antithesis:

Tēju dzeru es, ne viņa. It is I, not she, who drink tea.
Tēju es dzeru, ne tikai garšoju. I do drink tea, not just taste (it).

Other sentence elements can become emphatic in the final position:

Es dzeru tēju pēcpusdienā. I drink tea in the afternoon. OR: It's in the afternoon that I drink tea.

4.1.71 THE PRONOUN OBJECT BEFORE THE VERB. Not to receive an undue emphasis, the pronoun object avoids the final position by preceding ("hiding behind") the verb: Es tevi rędzu, bet tu mani neredzi. 'I see you, but you don't see me.' (See also 2.1.6)

However, if some other sentence element already occupies the last place, the pronoun object may follow the verb: Es viņus rędzu skolā. / Es rędzu viņus skolā. 'I see them at school.' (BUT, without the last added element, the inversion is mandatory: Es viņus rędzu. 'I see them.')

4.1.8 NEW STRUCTURES

4.1.81 KO-QUESTIONS use transitive verbs and obtain accusative objects in the answers:

Ko tu redzi? Whom do you see? Es redzu bērnus. I see children.
Ko bērni ēd? What do children eat? Bērni ēd gaļu. The children eat meat.

a. The question elicits infinitive object:

Ko bērni grib darīt? What do the children want to do?
Bērni grib ēst. The children want to eat.

b. The question elicits infinitive + accusative object:

Ko bērni grib ēst? What do the children want to eat?
Bērni grib ēst gaļu. The children want to eat meat.

c. The question and answer contain a prepositional accusative object:

Ar ko viņa runājas? With whom is she talking?
Viņa runājas ar skolotāju. She's talking with the teacher.
Uz ko tu skaties? At what are you looking? (col: What are you looking at?)
Es skatos uz pulksteni. I'm looking at the clock.

4.1.82 THE USES & STRUCTURES FOR THE VERB garšot. This verb has three different uses, each of which has also a different structure and meaning.

a. WHEN garšot IS USED AS A TRANSITIVE VERB, it means 'to taste' and takes accusative objects:

Es garšoju maizi. I am tasting bread. Pagaršo šo tēju. Taste this tea.

b. WHEN garšot IS USED INTRANSITIVELY, it means 'to taste = have a taste' and is accompanied by an adverb:

Šī tēja garšo labi. This tea tastes good. (Note that in English you must use the adjective here.)

c. WITH THE LOGICAL SUBJECT IN THE DATIVE, garšot means 'to like to eat/drink (something)':

Man garšo maize. I like (to eat) bread.
Vai tev garšo tēja? Do you like (to drink) tea?

4.1.9 ADDITIONAL NOTES

4.1.91 THE PRONOUN viss, visa, PL. visi, visas HAS THE FOLLOWING USES AND MEANINGS:

a. MODIFYING A NOUN, THE PLURAL FORMS MEAN 'ALL (THE)':

visi zēni all (the) boys visām meitenēm for all (the) girls
visus kokus all trees (ac. pl.) visās mājās in all houses

b. MODIFYING A NOUN, THE SINGULAR FORMS MEAN 'THE WHOLE, ALL (THE)':

visā dārzā in the whole yard visa tēja all (the) tea

c. STANDING ALONE, THE MASCULINE PLURAL FORM MEANS 'EVERYBODY, ALL':

Visi garšoja manu tēju. Everybody tasted my tea.
Visiem garšoja mana tēja. Everybody liked my tea.

d. STANDING ALONE, THE MASCULINE SINGULAR MEANS 'EVERYTHING, ALL':
Viss būs labi. Everything will be all right.
Visam ir savs laiks. Everything has its (own) time/season.

4.1.92 **HALF-HOUR CLOCK TIME PHRASES** use the prefix **pus-** 'half' + the numeral bases + the suffixes used with the full hours (see 3.3.11).
In English such phrases look back to the last full hour; thus 4:30 is 'half past four'. In Latvian the half-hour phrases look forward to the next full hour, and 4:30 is expressed as **puspieci** 'half to five'. Additional examples:

pusviens	half to one	12:30	pusvienos	at half to one
pusdivi	half to two	1:30	pusdivos	at half to two
pustrīs	half to three	2:30	pustrijos	at half to three
pusdeviņi	half to nine	8:30	pusdeviņos	at half to nine
pusdesmit	half to ten	9:30	pusdesmitos	at half to ten
pusdivpadsmit	half to twelve	11:30	pusdivpadsmitos	at half to twelve

a. THE PREFIX pus- CARRIES NO STRESS, which is on the first syllable of the number base: pusviens/pusvienos, pusdivi, pusdivpadsmit etc.

4.1.93 **VERB PREFIXES.** In our texts we are meeting more and more verbs with prefixes. At this point we can begin to generalize some of their uses:

a. The prefix ADDS A PREPOSITIONAL MEANING to the verb. Verb prefixes have prepositional bases. For this reason their primary meanings are also prepositional, esp. with the verbs of motion: atsaukties 'call in return', atvilkt 'pull back'; uzgērbt/uzvilkt 'put on (clothes)', uzlikt 'place on'; ielikt 'place in', ieliet 'pour in', iejet 'come in'; nolikt 'put down', etc.

b. The prefix SETS LIMITS TO THE ACTION. Without prefixes, Latvian verbs express ongoing actions with no reference to their duration limits. Any prefix added to the verb makes an action: 1. either FINISHED, like saplēst 'break to pieces', noslaucīt 'wipe off', uztaisīt 'prepare'; 2. or a SINGLE-ACT or MOMENTARY, like iedot 'give' (not keep giving), paņemt (not take & take), pastumt 'push a little (& then stop), pagriezties 'turn a little', pagaršot 'taste a little (just a bite or a sip), etc. Some of the momentary may also be sudden actions: iesaukties 'call out suddenly, exclaim'. THE VERBS IN a. ALSO HAVE ONE OF THESE ASPECTS ALONG WITH THE PREPOSITIONAL SENSE.

c. The prefix GIVES A NEW MEANING to the verb: ~~atrasties~~ 'be situated' (rasties 'come into being'), piestāvēt 'suit' (stāvēt 'stand'), uzvesties 'behave', palikt 'remain'.

d. Some verbs ARE NOT USED WITHOUT PREFIXES. As a rule, they are idiomatic: atbildēt 'answer', pazīt 'recognize'.

The second page of your new fill-in verb sheets provides spaces for a detailed inventory of the prefixed forms and their meanings. You may - after conjugating the basic verb on the first page - write the prefixed infinitives and their meanings in the appropriate sections of the 2nd page. At this time, however, don't worry about the numbers of meanings and the "second pointers". All that'll come later when our verb sample will have grown larger.

R-4.1 TAISIES UN EJ UZ SKOLU!

1. Es ceļos pulksten pusastoņos rītā. Mana istaba vēl ir tumša, jo logam priekšā ir aizkari. Es atvelku aizkarus, un istaba tūlīt kļūst ļoti gaiša. Nu es redzu visu, kas ir istabā. Es redzu gultu, krēslu, galdu un kumodi. Es paskatos logā. Izskatās, ka šodien būs skaista diena.

2. Es eju uz vannas istabu. Es skatos uz spoguli, un seja spogulī skatās uz mani. Vai es pazīstu šo seju? Es apskatu matus, pieri, acis, degunu, muti un zodu. Jā, tā ir mana seja. Es redzu sevi spogulī. Apakšā māte mani sauc: "Jāni, celies! Jāni, tūlīt ej mazgāties!" Es viņai atsaucos: "Es jau esmu vannas istabā un laižu ūdeni vannā!"

3. Vannā tek silts ūdens, un es mazgājos. Es ņemu ziepes un mazgāju seju, kaklu un arī vēderu un muguru. Es mazgāju vienu kāju, tad otru kāju. Kad es esmu tīrs, es slaukos. Es noslauku seju, kaklu un visu ķermeni. Es arī tīru zobus, un tad eju atpakaļ uz savu istabu.

4. Protams, māte jau atkal sauc: "Jāni, ko tu tik ilgi dari vannas istabā? Ģērbies un nāc lejā ēst! Un šorīt uzvelc citu kreklu! Vai tu dzirdi?" "Jā, jā, es dzirdu visu!" es atkal atsaucos un meklēju savas drēbes. Vispirms es uzģērbju tīru apakšveļu un zeķes.

uz skolu 'to school'
pusastoņos 'at half to eight' = at 7:30 (see 4.1.92)

atvelku 'I pull away/open'
aizkarus - ACCUSATIVES BEGIN
visu, kas ir 'everything that is'
paskatos 'I take a look'

izskatās '(it) looks'

skatos uz 'I'm looking at'

sevi 'myself' see 4.1.31

ej mazgāties - see 4.1.21

noslauku 'I dry (off)'
visu ķermeni 'the whole body'
savu 'my (own)' see 4.1.32

ģērbies, nāc, uzvelc are 2nd sg. imperatives (see 4.1.51 & .52)

uzģērbju 'I put on'

A D J E C T I V E S:

gatavs, gatava	ready	skaists, skaista	pretty, beautiful
silts, silta	warm	garšīgs, garšīga	tasty
karsts, karsta	hot	vēss, vēsa	cool
pilns, pilna	full	auksts, auksta	cold
		tukšs, tukša	empty

A D V E R B S:

atpakaļ	back	protams	of course	vispirms	first of all
šorīt	this morning	tiešām	indeed, really	nemaz (not)	at all

F U N C T I O N W O R D S:

ka introd: that — vis emph.(w. neg.): too, at all

P R E P O S I T I O N S:

ar with — par about, for — uz to, at

V E R B S:

saukt: sauc, sauca, sauks I-reg. tr: call // atsaukties call back
saukties: saucas, saucās, sauksies itr: be called/named; iesaukties exclaim
beigt: beidz, beidza, beigs I-reg. tr: end, finish
lūgt: lūdz, lūdza, lūgs I-reg. tr: ask, beg, pray
dot: dod, deva, dos I-reg. tr: give; iedot give
ēst: ēd, ēda, ēdīs I-reg. tr/itr: eat
dzert: dzer, dzēra, dzers I-reg. tr/itr: drink
liet: lej, lēja, liēs I-reg. tr: pour (liquid); ieliet pour in
ņemt: ņem, ņēma, ņems I-reg. tr: take; paņemt take
celt: ceļ, cēla, cels I-reg. tr: lift; pacelt lift
plēst: plēš, plēsa, plēsīs I-š/s tr: tear, rip; break; saplēst break
pūst: pūš, pūta, pūtīs I-š/t tr/itr: blow // nogriezt cut off
griezt: griež, grieza, griezīs I-ž/z tr: 1.griezt cut; 2.griezt turn, rotate
griezties: griežas, griezās, griezīsiēs itr: turn, rotate // pagriezt turn a little
laist: laiž, laida, laidīs I-ž/d tr: let
kāpt: kāpj, kāpa, kāps I-pj/p itr: climb
ģērbt: ģērbj, ģērba, ģērbs I-bj/b tr: clothe, put on (clothes); uzģērbt put
stumt: stumj, stūma, stums I-mj/m tr: push; pastumt push // on
sākt: sāk, sāka, sāks I-k/c tr: begin
likt: liek, lika, liks I-k/c tr: 1. put, place; 2. tell, order (to do);
ielikt put in; uzlikt put on; nolikt put down
vilkt: velk, vilka, vilks I-k/c tr: 1. pull, drag; 2. put on clothes/foot-
atvilkt pull open; uzvilkt put on; // wear
kļūt: kļūst, kļuva, kļūs I-st lk: become, get
pazīt: pazīst, pazina, pazīs I-st tr: recognize, know

meklēt: meklē, meklēja, meklēs II-ē tr: look for, seek
garšot: garšo, garšoja, garšos II-o tr/itr: taste; pagaršot taste, sample

redzēt: redz, redzēja, redzēs III-ē tr/itr: see
dzirdēt: dzird, dzirdēja, dzirdēs III-ē tr/itr: hear
tecēt: tek, tecēja, tecēs III-ē itr: flow, run
gribēt: grib, gribēja, gribēs III-ē tr: want, wish, desire
varēt: var, varēja, varēs III-ē tr: be able (to), can
skatīt: skata, skatīja, skatīs III-ī tr: look at, observe; apskatīt examine
slaucīt: slauka, slaucīja, slaucīs III-ī tr: wipe; sweep; noslaucīt wipe off
slaucītiēs: slaukās, slaucījās, slaucīsiēs itr: wipe oneself dry
taisīt: taisa, taisīja, taisīs III-ī tr: make; uztaisīt make, prepare
taisīties: taisās, taisījās, taisīsiēs itr: get ready
tīrīt: tīra, tīrīja, tīrīs III-ī tr: clean

R-4.1 ADDITIONAL READING EXERCISES

The paragraphs below illustrate isolated grammar points taught in this lesson. The text contains no additional new words. Thus it can be used for testing how much of the new vocabulary has been learned. Or, it can be read before the new reading selection to learn some grammar points.

11. IMPERATIVE vs. INDICATIVE forms (4.1.5):

Jāni, velc tīru kreklu mugurā! Jānis uzvelk tīru kreklu.

Anna, laid ūdeni vannā! Anna laiž ūdeni vannā.

Albert, ņem grāmatu un lasi! Alberts ņem grāmatu un lasa.

Inese, lej kafiju tasē un dzer! Inese lej kafiju tasē un dzer.

Pagriezies uz manu pusi! Es pagriežos uz tavu pusi.

Skatieties uz mani! Mēs skatāmies uz tevi.

Grieziet maizi un ēdiet! Vai jūs griežat maizi un ēdat?

Zēni, pastumiet galdu! Zēni, kāpēc jūs nestumjat galdu?

Aivar, nekāp kokos un neplēs bikses! Aivars bieži kāpj kokos un plēš bikses.

Bērni, sāciet ēst un dzert! Bērni sāk ēst un dzert.

Meitenes, ģērbiet mēteļus un ejiet uz skolu! Meitenes ģērbj mēteļus un iet uz skolu.

Nerakstiet tik ilgi, bet atpūtieties! Vai jūs vairs nerakstāt un atpūšaties?

Celies, mazgājies, ģērbies un taisies uz skolu! Es ceļos, mazgājos, gērbjos un taisos iet uz skolu.

12. INFINITIVES AS OBJECTS & TAKING OBJECTS (4.1.21 & .22):

Māte mūs sauc mazgāties.	Mēs nākam mazgāt rokas.
Māte dos bērniem ēst un dzert.	Māte dos bērniem ēst olu un dzert sulu.
Sāc lasīt!	Viņš sāk lasīt plānu grāmatu.
Ko tu gribi man dot?	Es gribu tev dot divus zīmuļus.
Vai jūs varat dzirdēt?	Jā, mēs varam dzirdēt visu.
Beidziet skatīties!	Beidziet uz mani skatīties!
Kas tev nepatīk darīt?	Man nepatīk mazgāt traukus un tīrīt istabas.
Ko tu taisies darīt?	Es taisos iet gulēt.
Kam patīk smieties?	Viņai patīk smieties par tevi.

13. THE REFLEXIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN sev- (4.1.31):

Tu redzi mani, un es redzu tevi. Bet tu neredzi sevi, un es arī neredzu sevi. Tagad es skatos spogulī. Nu es redzu sevi spogulī. Pagriez spoguli uz savu pusi un paskaties! Vai tagad tu redzi sevi spogulī?

Šis šķīvis ir netīrs. Es gribu sev citu šķīvi. Tu arī paņem sev šķīvi, nazi un dakšiņu. Viņi paņēma sev glāzes. Vai māsa ielēja sulu sev, tev un man? Neliec krūzi man priekšā, jo es sev sulu vairs neliešu.

14. THE REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE savs, f. sava (4.1.32):

Tu lasi savu grāmatu, un es lasu savu grāmatu. Tu nelasi manu grāmatu, un es nelasu tavu grāmatu. Tev ir savas spalvas un savi zīmuļi. Man arī ir savi zīmuļi un savas spalvas. Es apskatu tavus zīmuļus un spalvas. Tu apskati manas spalvas un zīmuļus. Mēs abi rakstām ar savām spalvām savās burtnīcās. Viņa raksta ar manu zīmuli savā burtnīcā. Kāpēc viņš raksta ar tavu zīmuli, ne savu? Kāpēc viņš grib rakstīt tavā burtnīcā, ne savā?

15. WORD ORDER CHANGES FOR EMPHASIS (4.1.7):

Kas dzer tēju? Tēju dzeru es. Vai tēju dzer arī māsa? Nē, viņa tēju nedzer, tikai garšo. Jānis redz Annu, bet ne Ilzi. Ilzi Jānis dzird, bet neredz. Annu redz Jānis. Anna Jāni neredz, bet Jānis Annu redz.

Vispirms es maizi nogriežu, tad ēdu. Maizi ēdu es un neviens cits. Šorīt māte deva mums brokastis. Māte deva mums brokastis šorīt. Šorīt māte deva brokastis mums. Šorīt brokastis mums deva māte. Rīt māte mums vairs brokastis nedos.

4.1 SUPPLEMENT: TABLE AND KITCHEN VOCABULARY

a. Meals

brokastis, -īm	*breakfast*	dzēriens, -am	*drink*	azaids, -am	*meal, repast*
pusdienas, -ām	*lunch, dinner*	ēdiens, -am	*food*	maltīte, -ei	*meal*
launags, -am	*afternoon snack*	ēdienreize, -ei	*meal time*	pārtika, -ai	*victuals, provisions*
vakariņas, -ām	*supper*	ēdamreize, -ei	*meal time*	uzturs, -am	*substinence*
saldais ēdiens	*desert*			uzkoda, -ai	*snack, tidbit*

b. Meat, Fish & Poultry

aknas, -ām	*liver*	asaris, -im	*perch*
bekons, -am	*bacon*	bute, -ei	*flounder*
cepetis, -im	*roast*	forele, -ei	*trout*
desa, -ai	*sausage*	ikri, -iem	*caviar, roe*
aknu desa	*liverwurst*	ķilava, -ai	*sprat*
dūmu desa	*smoked / dried sausage*	lasis, -im	*salmon*
gaļa, -ai	*meat*	līdaka, -ai	*pike*
cūkas gaļa	*pork*	nēģis, -im	*lamprey*
brieža gaļa	*venison*	siļķe, -ei	*herring*
jēra gaļa	*lamb*	vēzis, -im	*lobster*
liellopa gaļa	*beef*	sardīne, -ei	*sardine*
malta gaļa	*ground meat (beef)*	zivs, -ij	*fish*
teļa gaļa	*veal*	zutis, -im	*eel*
vērša gaļa	*beef*	cālis, -im	*chicken*
karbonāde, -ei	*chop*	pīle, -ei	*duck*
klopsis, -im	*meat sauce*	tītars, -am	*turkey*
kotlete, -ei	*hamburger*	zoss, -ij	*goose*
šķiņķis, -im	*ham*	zupa, -ai	*soup*
uzgriežamais, -am	*cold cut*		

c. Fruits & Vegetables

biete, -ei	*beet*	ābols, -am	*apple*
burkāns, -am	*carrot*	ananāss, -ij	*pinapple*
dārzājs, -am	*vegetable, green*	apelsīns, -am	*orange*
dārzenis, -im	" "	arbūzs, -am	*water melon*
gurķis, -im	*cucumber*	auglis, -im	*fruit*
skābais gurķis	*pickle*	avene, -ei	*raspberry*
kālis, -im	*turnip*	banāns, -am	*banana*
kāposti, -iem	*cabbage*	bumbieris, -im	*pear*
puķu kāposti	*cauliflower*	citrons, -am	*lemon*
skābie kāposti	*sauerkraut*	datele, -ei	*date*
kartupelis, -im	*potato*	ērkšķoga, -ai	*gooseberry*
ķiploks, -am	*garlic*	persiks, -am	*peach*
kukurūza, -ai	*corn*	greipfrūts, -am	*grapefruit*
loks, -am	*leek*	jāņoga, -ai	*currant*
mīza, -ai	*rind, skin, peel*	ķirbis, -im	*pumpkin*
pupa, -ai	*bean*	ķirsis, -im	*cherry*
redīss, -am	*radish*	mellene, -ei	*blueberry*
rīsi, -iem	*rice*	melone, -ei	*melon*
sakne, -ei	*vegetable; root*	oga, -ai	*berry*
salāti, -iem	*lettuce; salad*	olīva, -ai	*olive*
selerija, -ai	*celery*	rabarbers, -am	*rhubarb*
sēne, -ei	*mushroom*	plūme, -ei	*plum*
sīpols, -am	*onion*	rozīne, -ei	*raisin*
sparģelis, -im	*asparagus*	vīģe, -ei	*fig*
spināti, -iem	*spinach*	vīnoga, -ai	*grape*
tomāts, -am	*tomato*	zemene, -ei	*strawberry*
zirnis, -im	*pea*		

d. Drinks

alus, -um	*beer*	ledus, -um	*ice*	ūdens, -im	*water*
degvīns, -am	*brandy; spirits*	paniņas, -am	*buttermilk*	vājpiens, -am	*skim milk*
kafija, -ai	*coffee*	piens, -am	*milk*	vīns, -am	*wine*
kokteilis, -im	*cocktail*	sula, -ai	*juice*	zelteris, -im	*soda, seltzer*
		tēja, -ai	*tea*		

e. Desert

cepums, -am	*pastry*	kūka, -ai	*cake*	sīrups, -am	*syrup*
ievārījums, -am	*jam*	ķīselis, -im	*clear pudding*	šokolāde, -ei	*chocolate*
konfekte, -ei	*piece of candy*	medus, -um	*honey*	torte, -ei	*layer cake*
kūciņa, -ai	*cookie*	pudiņš, -am	*pudding*	želeja, -ai	*gelatin*
		saldējums, -am	*ice cream*		

f. Breads

drupata, -ai	*crumb*		
garoza, -ai	*crust*	pīrāgs, -am	*meat-filled pastry*
kliņģeris, -im	*knot-shaped pastry, twist*	plācenis, -im	*flat-cake*
kukulis, -im	*loaf*	putra, -ai	*porrige*
maize, -ei	*bread*	auzu pārslu putra	*oatmeal porrige*
baltmaize	*white bread*	mannas putra	*farina*
rupjmaize	*dark rye bread*	putraimu putra	*groats porrige*
saldskābmaize	*sour dough bread (light rye)*	rausis, -im	*biscuit, pie*
sviestmaize	*sandwich*	raugs, -am	*yeast*
makaroni, -iem	*macaroni (pasta)*	rieksts, -am	*nut*
mērce, -ei	*gravy, sauce*	riekstu sviests	*peanut butter*
mīkla, -ai	*dough*	sacepums, -am	*casserole*
milti, -iem	*flour*	sausiņš, -am	*cracker*
pankūka, -ai	*pancake*	stērķele, -ei	*starch*

g. Spices

anise, -ei	*licorice*	kanēlis, -im	*cinnamon*	pipari, -iem	*pepper*
cepamais pulveris	*baking powder*	ķimene, -ei	*caraway seed*	sāls, -ij	*salt*
dille, -ei	*dill*	krustnagliņa, -ai	*clove*	sinepes, -em	*mustard*
eļļa, -ai	*oil*	lauru lapa, -ai	*bay leaf*	tauki, -iem	*fat, lard*
etiķis, -im	*vinegar*	muskatrieksts, -am	*nutmeg*	tomātu biezenis, -im	*ketchup*
garšviela, -ai	*spice*	pētersīlis, -im	*parsley*	vanila, -ai	*vanilla*

h. Dairy

biezpiens, -am	*cottage cheese*	skābais krējums	*sour cream*	margarīns, -am	*margarine*
krējums, -am	*cream*	jogurts, -am	*yoghurt*	ola, -ai	*egg*
putu krējums	*whipped cream*	majonēze, -ei	*mayonnaise*	siers, -am	*cheese*
saldais krējums	*heavy (sweet) cream*			sviests, -am	*butter*

i. Actions

(sa)biezē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) thicken*
(sa)biezina, -āja, -ās *(III-ā) cause to thicken*
cep, cepa, ceps *(I) fry, roast, broil, bake*
piedeg, dega, degs *(I) burn (food only)*
dzer, dzēra, dzers *(I) drink*
(at)dzisina, -āja, -ās *(III-ā) cool*
ēd, ēda, ēdīs *(I) eat*
garšo, -oja, -os *(II-o) like the taste of*
pagaršo, utt. *(II-o) taste something*
nogaršo, utt. *(II-o) " "*
(pa)gatavo, -oja, -os *(II-o) prepare*
(sa)griež, grieza, griezīs *(I) cut up*
(sa)kapā, -āja, -ās *(II-ā) chop up*
(no)kāš, kāsa, kāsīs *(I) drain*
kausē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) melt*
klāj, klāja, klās *(I) set (table)*
sakrīt, krita, kritīs *(I) be flat-baked*
kūļ, kūla, kuls *(I) whip, beat*
lej, lēja, lies *(I) pour*
loba, -īja, -īs *(III-ī) peel*
maisa, -īja, -īs *(III-ī) mix, stir*
mazgā, -āja, -ās *(II-ā) wash*
mīca, -īja, -īs *(III-ī) knead*
mizo, -oja, -os *(II-o) peel*
raudzē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) cause to leaven*
sarecē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) set (as gelatins)*
rīj, rija, rīs *(I) swallow*
rīvē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) grate*
rūgst, rūga, rūgs *(I) leaven, ferment*
sāla, -īja, -īs *(III-ī) salt*
saldē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) freeze*
atsaldē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) thaw*
sasmalcina, -āja, -ās *(III-ā) dice*
sautē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) stew, steam*
sijā, -āja, -ās *(II-ā) sift*
silda, -īja, -īs *(III-ī) warm, heat*
skābst, skāba, skābs *(I) turn sour*
skalo, -oja, -os *(II-o) rinse*
vāra, -īja, -īs *(III-ī) boil*
žāvē, -ēja, -ēs *(II-ē) dry, smoke*

j. Kitchen and Tableware

asmens, -nim blade, cutting edge
biķeris, -rim goblet
bļoda, -dai bowl
burka, -kai jar
bundža, -džai colloq. for tin can
cepeškrāsns baking oven
cepešpanna broiling/roasting pan
dakšiņa, -ņai table fork
galdauts, -tam tablecloth
gaļas mašīna meat grinder
glāze, glāzei glass
kanna, kannai can, jug; urn
karote, -tei spoon
  ēdamkarote tablespoon
  tējkarote teaspoon
krūze, krūzei mug; jar
kastrolis, -lim sauce pan
katls, katlam kettle, pot
kafijas dzirnaviņas coffee grinder
karafe decanter
kārba, kārbai can, box
  konservu kārba tin can of preserved
maisāmā mašīna mixer, beater //food
mērces trauks gravy boat
nazis, nazim knife
  cepeša nazis carving knife
  maizes nazis (bread) slicing knife
panna, pannai pan
paplāte, -tei tray, salver
pavārnīca, -cai ladle
plīts, plītij stove, range
pods, podam pot
rīve, rīvei grater
salvete, -tei napkin
servjete, -tei "
servīze, -zei service set
šķīvis, -vim dish, plate
tase, tasei cup
  apakštase saucer
trauks, traukam vessel, container
  pelnu trauks ashtray
  sālstrauks salt cellar
  sinepju trauks mustard pot
  koka trauki wooden vessels
  māla trauki earthenware
  porcelāna trauki chinaware
  stikla trauki glassware
  sudraba trauki silverware
  trauku dvielis dish towel
  trauku skapis cupboard
vāze, vāzei vase
zupas bļoda soup tureen

WRITE-IN DECLENSION CHART

NOUNS: SINGULAR	MASC. a-stem	MASC. i-stem	MASC. u-stem	FEM. a-stem	FEM. e-stem	FEM. i-stem
nom.kas?	k o k s	skap i s	l e d u s	m ā j a	virtuv e	plīt s
gen.kā?						
dat.kam?	k o k a m	skap i m	l e d u m	m ā j a i	virtuv e i	plīt i j
acc.ko?	*k o k u*	*skap i*	*l e d u*	*m ā j u*	*virtuv i*	*plīt i*
loc.kur?	k o k ā	skap ī	l e d ū	m ā j ā	virtuv ē	plīt ī
PLURAL	all masc.adjs., reg.prons.&nums. are a-stem decl.			all fem.adjs., reg.prons.&nums. are a-stem decl.		
nom.kas?	kok i	skapj i	led i	māj a s	virtuv e s	plīt i s
gen.kā?						
dat.kam?	kok iem	skapj iem	led iem	māj ā m	virtuv ē m	plīt ī m
acc.ko?	*kok u s*	*skapj u s*	*led u s*	*māj a s*	*virtuv e s*	*plīt i s*
loc.kur?	kok o s	skapj o s	led o s	māj ā s	virtuv ē s	plīt ī s

SPECIAL DECLENSION PATTERNS

SINGULAR	'that' masc.	'that' fem.	'this' masc.	'this' fem.	'I'	'you-sg.'	'-self' (refl.)	'(the very) -self' masc.	'(the very) -self' fem.
nom.kas?	tas,	tā	šis,	šī	es	tu	- - -	paṭs	paṭi
gen.kā?									
dat.kam?	tam,	tai	šim,	šai	man	tev	sev	pašam	pašai
acc.ko?	*to*		*šo*		*mani*	*tevi*	*sevi*	*pašu*	
loc.kur?	tajā		šajā		manī	tevī	sevī	etc. (reg. a-stem forms)	

PLURAL	'those' m.	'those' f.	'these' m.	'these' f.	'we'	'you-pl.'	sg.=pl.	'three' masc.	'three' common	'three' fem.
nom.kas?	tie,	tās	šie,	šīs	mēs	jūs	- - -		trīs	
gen.kā?										
dat.kam?	tiem,	tām	šiem,	šīm	mums	jums	- - -	trijiem,		trijām
acc.ko?	*tos,*	*tās*	*šos,*	*šīs*	*mūs*	*jūs*	- - -		*trīs*	
loc.kur?	tajos,	tajās	šajos,	šajās	mūsos	jūsos	- - -	trijos,		trijās

VERB FILL-IN SHEETS

Starting with this lesson, you should be filling in verb sheets instead of cards. The verb sheets have two versions: one for the active and one for the reflexive verbs. Preferably the sheets for each type should be run off in different colors. (Since our elementary school color code for the verbs is green, perhaps light green and greenish yellow would serve quite well for our verb sheets.)

WHY THESE VERB SHEETS? Take a look at the both types of the verb sheets. Consider that both of them are meant for ONE SINGLE VERB since most Latvian verbs can have both the active and the reflexive forms. Note that besides the personal forms of the three simple tenses, each tense stem generates also various participial forms (and the verb sheet shows at a glance where each of them belongs). The other side of the sheet - exactly the same for both types of verbs - provides a complete survey of the whole prefixation mechanism. Now you should have an idea that EACH VERB IS A WHOLE SYSTEM OF MANY INTERRELATED FORMS, and you'll have to learn to understand and manage these forms.

TO START FILLING IN THE BASIC INFORMATION:

SELECT THE RIGHT VERB SHEET (active or reflexive) for a particular verb on your vocabulary list. You should distinguish the types by the shapes of their principal parts.

TRANSFER YOUR VOCABULARY ENTRY TO THE TOP OF THE VERB SHEET. Note the spaces provided on the top three lines for the data that the vocabulary contains in a single line. Write the verb functional type (tr., itr., lk.) on the third line with the verb meaning.

TO CONJUGATE A VERB IN THE PRESENT TENSE:

REWRITE THE PRESENT PRINCIPAL PART from its top box into the box inside the present tense section. As you should know, this boxed form is the third common verb person, from which all other present tense forms are made.

NOW CONSULT THE CODE. It will help you to find the right conjugational pattern sample in this or a previous lesson.

Following the sample, MAKE UP THE REST OF THE PERSONAL FORMS and write them in: the 1st & 2nd singular (es, tu) above, and 1st & 2nd plural below the box. By similar procedures you'll fill in the past and future conjugation columns later on.

TO ADD THE IMPERATIVE FORMS:

Note that they are derived from the present tense stem although they themselves carry no indication of any tense.

THE 2ND SG. INDICATIVE AND IMPERATIVE ARE IDENTICAL. Following the arrow, rewrite the 2nd sg. indicative as the 2nd sg. imperative.

FOR THE 2nd PLURAL IMPERATIVE, drop the singular imperative ending (if there is any). To the remaining base-end add the appropriate 2nd pl. imperative suffix that already is indicated on the sheet.

(Note that the 2nd pl. indicative has nothing to do with the formation of the 2nd pl. imperative. In fact, their base ends may look quite different.)

DON'T RUSH AHEAD ON YOUR OWN! DON'T FILL IN ANYTHING THAT YOU HAVE NOT BEEN TAUGHT HOW TO MAKE AND USE! Don't fill in even the already learned forms without a constant supervision and fairly immediate checking by your teacher. ELSE, YOU MAY 'TEACH' YOURSELF SOME ABSURDITIES THAT COULD BE HARD TO UNLEARN.

INFINITIVE: _____

BASIC MEANING(S): _____

PREFIXED VERB MEANINGS

(In parentheses are the **second pointers**.)

aiz- 1. BEHIND (**aiz**);
2. AWAY (**prom, uz, pie**); 3. UP TO (**līdz**); 4. BAR, SHUT (**ciet**);
0.

ap- 1. AROUND (**ap, apkārt**);
2. ALL OVER (**ar**); 3. TOTALLY (---);
0.

at- 1. HITHER, (TO) HERE (**šurp**);
2. AWAY, OFF (**no nost**); 3. BACK, (IN)RETURN (**atpakaļ, no, pret**); 4. OPEN, LOOSE (**vaļā**);
0.

ie- 1. INTO (locative ending, **iekšā**);
2. SOMEWHAT, ONCE (**mazliet, vienreiz**);
3. SUDDENLY, START (**pēkšņi**);
0.

iz- 1. OUT(OF), OUTSIDE (**no, ārā**
2. THOROUGHLY, COMPLETELY (---):
3. THROUGH (**caur**);
0.

no- 1. OFF, FROM (**nost, no**);
2. DOWN (**zemē, lejā**); 3.(UP)/DOWN TO (**līdz, pie**);
4. COMPLETELY (---); 5. A GOOD WHILE (time phr.);
0.

pa- 1. UNDER (**zem**);
2. A LITTLE / A WHILE (**mazliet, drusku, ---**);
3. DO ONCE / FINISH (---);
0.

pār- 1. OVER, ACROSS (**pār, pāri**);
2. AGAIN (**vēlreiz, atkal**); 3. BACK (loc.);
4. IN HALF (**pušu**); 5. OVERMATCH (---);
6. OVERDO (**par daudz, ļoti, ---**);
0.

pie- 1. TO, AT, NEAR (**pie, klāt, vēl**);
2. IN ADDITION (**vēl turklāt**); 3. FILL FULL (**piln-, vis-, vesel-**); 4. FINISH (---);
0.

sa- 1. DO TOGETHER (**kopā**, loc.);
2. ADD/AMASS TOGETHER (**kopā**, loc.);
3. MAKE AN AMOUNT (**daudz**, etc.);
4. DO COMPLETELY (---); 5. DO ONCE/SUDDENLY (---);
6. PERCEIVE, SENSE (---); 7. DIVIDE/SPLIT UP (loc.);
0.

uz- 1. ON, UPON (**uz, virs, virsū**);
2. TO, TOWARDS (acc./dat. end.); 3. MOVE UP (**augšā, uz**, loc.); 4. DO, ACCOMPLISH (---); 0.

REFLEXIVE FORMS (_____)

↑ CODE ↑ INFINITIVE

↑ PRESENT Principal Part	↑ PAST Principal Part	↑ FUTURE Principal Part

MEANING(S):

Forms of the PRESENT Tense Stem:

es _____

tu _____

3rd com. [ ]

mēs _____

jūs _____

→ relative / indicative -oties

→ 2nd sg. imperative -ies!

jā- debitive

2nd pl. imperative (made from imper. sg. form) -ieties!

Forms of the PAST Tense Stem:

es _____

tu _____

3rd com. [ ]

mēs _____

jūs _____

participle - masc. sg. -ies

participle - fem. sg. -usies

participle - masc. pl. -usies

participle - fem. pl. -usās

Forms of the FUTURE Tense Stem:

es _____

tu _____

3rd com. [ ]

mēs _____

jūs _____

relative -šoties

participle - masc. sg. -damies

participle - fem. sg. -damās

infinitive -ties

conditional -tos

INFINITIVE: _____

BASIC MEANING(S): _____

PREFIXED VERB MEANINGS

(In parentheses are the **second pointers**.)

aiz- 1. BEHIND (**aiz**);
2. AWAY (**prom, uz, pie**); 3. UP TO (**līdz**); 4. BAR, SHUT (**ciet**);
0.

ap- 1. AROUND (**ap, apkārt**);
2. ALL OVER (**ar**); 3. TOTALLY (---);
0.

at- 1. HITHER, (TO) HERE (**šurp**);
2. AWAY, OFF (**no nost**); 3. BACK, (IN)RETURN (**atpakaļ, no, pret**); 4. OPEN, LOOSE (**vaļā**);
0.

ie- 1. INTO (locative ending, **iekšā**);
2. SOMEWHAT, ONCE (**mazliet, vienreiz**);
3. SUDDENLY, START (**pēkšņi**);
0.

iz- 1. OUT(OF), OUTSIDE (**no, ārā**
2. THOROUGHLY, COMPLETELY (---):
3. THROUGH (**caur**);
0.

no- 1. OFF, FROM (**nost, no**);
2. DOWN (**zemē, lejā**); 3. (UP)/DOWN TO (**līdz, pie**);
4. COMPLETELY (---); 5. A GOOD WHILE (time phr.);
0.

pa- 1. UNDER (**zem**);
2. A LITTLE / A WHILE (**mazliet, drusku, ---**);
3. DO ONCE / FINISH (---);
0.

pār- 1. OVER, ACROSS (**pār, pāri**);
2. AGAIN (**vēlreiz, atkal**); 3. BACK (loc.);
4. IN HALF (**pušu**); 5. OVERMATCH (---);
6. OVERDO (**par daudz, ļoti, ---**);
0.

pie- 1. TO, AT, NEAR (**pie, klāt, vēl**);
2. IN ADDITION (**vēl turklāt**); 3. FILL FULL (**piln-, vis-, vesel-**); 4. FINISH (---);
0.

sa- 1. DO TOGETHER (**kopā**, loc.);
2. ADD/AMASS TOGETHER (**kopā**, loc.);
3. MAKE AN AMOUNT (**daudz**, etc.);
4. DO COMPLETELY (---); 5. DO ONCE/SUDDENLY (---);
6. PERCEIVE, SENSE (---); 7. DIVIDE/SPLIT UP (loc.);
0.

uz- 1. ON, UPON (**uz, virs, virsū**);
2. TO, TOWARDS (acc./dat. end.); 3. MOVE UP (**augšā, uz**, loc.); 4. DO, ACCOMPLISH (---); 0.

X

LESSON 4.2

LEARNING THE PAST TENSE
MAKING THE DIMINUTIVES

THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR PREPOSITION SET (.1)

TIME ACCUSATIVES (.21)
DIRECTIONAL ACCUSATIVE PHRASES (.22-.24)

FORMATION AND USE OF THE DIMINUTIVES (.3)

THE PRONOUN pats AND DOUBLE PRONOUNS (.4)

ADDITIONS TO THE PRESENT TENSE CONJUGATION (.5)

SURVEY OF THE PAST TENSE CONJUGATION (.6)

REVIEW OF THE DEPENDENT CLAUSES (.81)
DATIVE SUBJECT STRUCTURES WITH veikties, let, likties (.82)

VOCABULARY: MORE SCHOOL TERMINOLOGY
DIRECTIONAL PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBIAL PHRASES
DAYS OF THE WEEK

4.2 GRAMMAR:

4.2.1 THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR (DATIVE PLURAL) PREPOSITION SET

As their name implies, the prepositions are "placed before" nouns (pronouns) to express various grammatical relationships. As we saw, the Latvian locatives and the English prepositions 'in', 'into', 'on' are used in similar situations. Where the case endings do not suffice, Latvian too must make use of the prepositions. It is important to know that any preposition placed before a noun (pronoun) MAKES THAT NOUN TO TAKE ON CERTAIN CASE ENDING. This divides Latvian prepositions into two sets:

1. the prepositions that induce the nouns to take the genitive singular forms;
2. the prepositions that induce the nouns to take the accusative singular forms.

In the plural, all prepositions demand the dative forms. Some prepositions can go with more than one declensional case, and their meanings change with each different use.

The accusative singular preposition set contains these ten prepositions:

ap, ar, gar, pa, par, pār, pret, starp, caur & uz	Check their meanings in the vocabulary; also, see the Reading Exercise A. These should suffice for now. In a later lesson you'll be given an elaborate list of all prepositions. The preposition uz functions in both sets.

The most important characteristic of the prepositions in this set is that THEY INDICATE OR IMPLY DYNAMIC, NOT STATIC, RELATIONSHIPS. They add directions to the verbs (skriet ap māju 'run around the house', skatīties uz māju 'look at the house', runāt par māju 'talk about the house', etc.), or they imply a series of points, not a single location in the space (or time) relationships.

a. A preposition can have several meanings, some of them quite diverse; note the uses of par or pa. Some uses may be limited in peculiar ways: note that pa meaning through is largely limited to looking (through a window) or entering/leaving (through a door).
b. It is very important to remember to switch to the dative forms when one is using the plural. SG: ap māju 'around the house', gar dārzu 'alongside the yard', par tevi 'about you'; PL: ap mājām, gar dārziem, par jums.

4.2.11 THE PREPOSITION līdz USES THE DATIVE ALSO IN THE SINGULAR: līdz mājai 'up to the house' (pl: līdz mājām); līdz rītam 'until morning'. Note that its meanings are static - refering to a fixed point in space or time. Only when it is used postpositionally (after a noun/pronoun) it loses this rigid reference: nāc man līdz 'come (along) with me'. In this use it can be replaced by the adverb līdzi.

4.2.2 ADDITIONAL USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE. The accusative forms may be used in time and directional phrases.

4.2.21 TIME ACCUSATIVES indicate mostly the duration or frequency: Es mācījos visu nedēļu. 'I was studying all week (long).' Katru rītu mēs ēdam brokastis. 'Every morning we eat breakfast.'

4.2.22 DIRECTIONAL PHRASES WITH POSITION NOUNS. In Lesson 3.2 vocabulary we saw a group of nouns whose locative singular forms indicated relative positions (see also 3.2.1). The accusative singular forms of the same nouns indicate directions when used with the preposition uz:

uz augšu 'upward/up'	uz iekšu 'inward'	uz kuru pusi 'in which direction'
uz leju 'down(ward)'	uz āru 'outward'	uz šo pusi 'in this direction'
uz priekšu 'forward/ahead'	uz vidu 'centerward'	uz to pusi 'in that direction'
uz aizmuguri 'to the rear'	uz malu 'to the side'	uz __ pusi 'in ____ direction'

The middle slot in the last phrase may be filled with all kinds of words: uz otru pusi 'to the other side', uz manu pusi 'towards me', etc.

4.2.23 DIRECTIONAL PHRASES WITH ADVERBIAL NOUNS. Three quasi-nouns *kuriene, *turiene, *šejiene (& some others of this pattern) exist only in the genitive and accusative singular forms to make adverbial phrases with certain prepositions. These are directional phrases formed with the preposition uz: uz kurieni 'where to, whither'; uz turieni 'to there, to that place'; uz šejieni 'to here, hither'.

4.2.24 POSITION NOUNS IN "DISPERSED LOCATION" PHRASES WITH pa. The basic meaning of this preposition is 'all over (the)'. When location phrases are made with it, no single fixed reference point, but the whole approximate area is meant:

pa augšu '(all over) upstairs'	pa iekšu '(in the whole of the) inside'
pa apakšu '(all over) downstairs'	pa āru '(everywhere) outside'
pa leju '(all over) downstairs'	pa vidu 'in between'
pa priekšu '(moving) in front of'	pa malu '(moving) along the side

a. Here belong also two phrases made from direction adjectives: pa labi 'to the right', pa kreisi 'to the left'.

4.2.3 **THE DIMINUTIVES** are nouns (in most cases) that take on special suffixes to indicate one (or more) of these three aspects:

DIMINUTIVE SIZE - **krēsliņš** 'little chair', **gultiņa** 'little bed', **bērniņš** 'little child', **meitenīte** 'little girl'.

ENDEARMENT - **māmiņa** 'dear mother', **tētiņš** 'dear father', **Ilzīte** 'dear Ilze', **Jānītis** 'dear John'. The last two words may have both aspect at the same time: **Ilzīte** 'dear little Ilze', **Jānītis** 'dear little Johnny', the same also for words like **brālītis** 'dear little brother', **māsiņa** 'dear little sister' - but they can be used for grownups too.

PEJORATIVE use is somewhat less common: **vīrelis** 'insignificant little man', **prātiņš** 'wee little mind'. In such instances the words like "little" should convey insignificance or contempt.

4.2.31 **DIMINUTIVE FORMATIONS** FOLLOW THE NOUN DECLENSION STEMS; the choice of the diminutive suffix depends on the declension of the noun:

a. THE a-STEM NOUNS OF BOTH GENDERS INSERT THE SUFFIX -iņ- between the noun bases and endings (the nom. sg. masc. -s becomes -š after -ņ-): **krēsl-s** 'chair' - **krēsliņš**; gult-a 'bed' - dim. **gultiņa**. The base-end -k- & -g- must change to -c- & -dz- respectively before the suffix -iņ-: **roka** 'hand' - dim, **rociņa**; **svārki** 'coat' - dim. **svārciņi**; **draugs** 'friend' - dim. **draudziņš**.

b. THE MASC. i-STEMS & FEM. e-STEMS INSERT THE SUFFIX -īt- between the noun bases and endings: brāl-is 'brother' - dim. **brālītis**; skap-is 'cupboard' - **skapītis**; meiten-e 'girl' - **meitenīte**; biks-es 'pants' - **biksītes**.

c. THE MASC. u-STEMS & FEM. i-STEMS INSERT THE SUFFIX -tiņ- (in most cases) and ADOPT THE a-STEM ENDINGS. However irregularities occur often, and it is best, therefore, to learn these diminutives one by one:

ļedus 'ice' - dim.	**ļedutiņš**		**brokastis** 'breakfast' -		**brokastiņas**
vidus 'center' "	**vidiņš**		**durvis** 'door' -	dim.	**dur(v)tiņas**
acs 'eye' "	**actiņa**		**nakts** 'night'	"	**naksniņa**
auss 'ear' "	**austiņa**		**plīts** 'stove'	"	**plītiņa**
balss 'voice' "	**balstiņa**		**uzacs** 'eyebrow'	"	**uzacīte**

d. IRREGULAR DIMINUTIVES are made also for some nouns in the first two (**a.** & **b.**) categories. So far we have these nouns:
ūdens 'water' - dim. **ūdentiņš** (this noun belongs to a small subcategory to
brīdis 'moment' " **brītiņš** // be studied later)
dęguns 'nose' " **dęguntiņš** (probably by analogy with **actiņa**, **austiņa**)

e. DIMINUTIVES FROM OTHER WORD TYPES are sometimes made ADJECTIVAL: **mazs** 'little' - **maziņš** 'very little'; **labs** 'good' - **labiņš** 'good and nice'.
ADVERBIAL: **tūliņ/tūlīt** "this little moment" = 'right away'.

4.2.4 ADDITIONAL PRONOUNS. This lesson includes the emphatic **pats**, **pati**, the nom. sg. forms are irregular, but all the rest follow the a-stem declension pattern (see the bottom section of the Declension Chart). It is used as a modifier or appositive with nouns and other pronouns. It also combines with certain other pronouns to make double modifiers (see Reading Exercise B.)

4.2.41 Pats USED WITH NOUNS/PRONOUNS adds emphasis to the word with which it associates and means '-self' (specified in English as 'mysel', 'yourself', etc.) It can be placed before or after a nouns, but must always follow a pronoun: **Paši zēni** (or: **Zēni paši**) **neko neteica**. 'The boys themselves did not say anything.' But only this version with a pronoun: **Viņi paši neko neteica**. 'They themselves did not say anything.'

a. With things - esp. with the position nouns, and esp. in the locative - pats can mean 'the very': Pašā vidū bija galds. In the very middle (there) was a table.'

4.2.42 PHRASAL PRONOUNS tas pats 'THE SAME' AND tāds pats 'OF THE SAME KIND': Šī ir tā pati grāmata, ko es lasīju. 'This is the same book that I read.' Nevelc to pašu kreklu šodien! 'Do not put on the same shirt today!' Mana spalva ir tādā pašā krāsā kā tava. 'My pen is in the same color as yours.' Šis nav tāds pats krēsls kā tas. 'This is not the same kind of chair as that (one).'
a. The phrasal pronoun viens pats 'alone, by oneself' enters similar structures: Es to padarīju viens pats. 'I did it alone.' / 'I did it by myself.'

4.2.43 THE DOUBLE MODIFIER PRONOUNS pats savs 'ONE'S OWN' AND katrs savs 'EACH ONE'S OWN' are unique structural pairs that don't fuse semantically to make unified meanings. Each element in each pair modifies a different noun/pronoun in the same sentence. Man ir pašai sava grāmata. 'I have my own book.' Bērni lasa katrs savu grāmatu.

4.2.5 ADDITIONS TO THE PRESENT TENSE CONJUGATION. For the first time in our vocabulary are entering the verbs from I-i, II-ū and III-ā classes.

I-i VERBS: There are about a dozen I. conjugation verbs that take -i in the 2nd sg. even though they are not -st-verbs. All of them have a long base vowel, and most of them are intransitive. Of this type, labeled "I-i", we now have the verb saprast 'understand'.

II-ū CLASS has only one representative, the verb dabūt 'get, become'.

III-ā VERBS that have entered our vocabulary are zināt 'know', dziedāt 'sing', raudāt 'cry'. The verb zinat is a regular representative of its type with an -a in its present principal part: zina. The other two verbs are unique in that their present principal part has no ending: dzied, raud. This makes their present tense conjugation resemble that of III-e verbs (with the short -am, -at in the plural).

THE PRESENT TENSE CONJUGATION OF ALL THE ABOVE VERBS:

		I-i	II-ū	III-ā	III-ā	III-ā
1st sg.	es	saprotu	dabūju	zinu	dziedu	raudu
2nd sg.	tu	saproti	dabū	zini	dziedi	raudi
3rd com.	visi	saprot	dabū	zina	dzied	raud
1st pl.	mēs	saprotam	dabūjam	zinām	dziedam	raudam
2nd pl.	jūs	saprotat	dabūjat	zināt	dziedat	raudat

4.2.6 THE PAST TENSE CONJUGATION

Leaving the present tense, we leave all irregularities behind. In the past tense all verbs are regular. There are only two sets of the past tense personal endings, one for the active and one for the reflexive verbs.

PERSONS:	ACTIVE SET:	REFLEXIVE SET:
1st sg.	-u	-os
2nd sg.	-i	-ies
3rd com.	-a	-as
1st pl.	-ām	-āmies
2nd pl.	-āt	-āties

(Note that these two sets are used also in the present tense of those verbs [III-ā like zina & all III-ī] that have an -a in their present principal part.)

4.2.61 PAST TENSE SAMPLE OF THE I. CONJUGATION VERBS:

	I-ļ/l	I-š/t	I-bj/b	I-k/c	I-reg.	I-reg.	I-ļ/l	I-bj/b
1.sg.	cēlu	pūtu	ģērbu	liku	saucu	saucos	cēlos	ģērbos
2.sg.	cēli	pūti	ģērbi	liki	sauci	saucies	cēlies	ģērbies
3.com.	cēla	pūta	ģērba	lika	sauca	saucās	cēlās	ģērbās
1.pl.	cēlām	pūtām	ģērbām	likām	saucām	saucāmies	cēlāmies	ģērbāmies
2.pl.	cēlāt	pūtāt	ģērbāt	likāt	saucāt	saucāties	cēlāties	ģērbāties

Note that the subdivisions like I-ļ/l, š/t, etc. have become unimportant to conjugate these verbs in the past tense.

4.2.62 PAST TENSE SAMPLE OF THE II. CONJUGATION VERBS:

	II-ū	II-o	II-ē	II-ā	II-ā	II-ē	II-o
1.sg.	dabūju	laboju	spēlēju	mazgāju	mazgājos	spēlējos	labojos
2.sg.	dabūji	laboji	spēlēji	mazgāji	mazgājies	spēlējies	labojies
3.com.	dabūja	laboja	spēlēja	mazgāja	mazgājās	spēlējās	labojās
1.pl.	dabūjām	labojām	spēlējām	mazgājām	mazgājāmies	spēlējāmies	labojāmies
2.pl.	dabūjāt	labojāt	spēlējāt	mazgājāt	mazgājāties	spēlējāties	labojāties

The feature of [**long vowel + -j-**] between the verb bases and the personal endings is present in all past tense forms of this conjugation.
Two verbs not yet in our vocabulary: **spēlēt** 'play an instrument',
laboties 'mend one's ways'.
We do not yet have any verb of the rare II-Ī type.

4.2.63 PAST TENSE SAMPLE OF THE III. CONJUGATION VERBS:

	III-ā	III-ē	III-ī	III-ī	III-ē	III-ā
1.sg.	zināju	gulēju	mācīju	mācījos	aizgulējos	sazinājos
2.sg.	zināji	gulēji	mācīji	mācījies	aizgulējies	sazinājies
3.com.	zināja	gulēja	mācīja	mācījās	aizgulējās	sazinājās
1.pl.	zinājām	gulējām	mācījām	mācījāmies	aizgulējāmies	sazinājāmies
2.pl.	zinājāt	gulējāt	mācījāt	mācījāties	aizgulējāties	sazinājāties

In the past tense the II. and III. conjugation verb forms look alike. However, for those verbs that use the same ending sets also in the present, the addition of the [**long vowel + -j-**] in the past becomes the past tense marker. (See **zināt** here and in 4.2.5 above.)

Verbs not yet in our vocabulary:
aizgulēties: aizguļas, aizgulējās, aizgulēsies itr: oversleep
sazināties: sazinās, sazinājās, sazināsies itr: communicate (with)

4.2.64 ADDITIONAL NOTES ON CONJUGATION

a. **CHANGES WITHIN THE VERB BASE** occur in many **I. conjugation** verbs when they CHANGE THE TENSES. Let's compare some present and past tense Ist sg. forms, which have the same ending in both tenses:
ceļu - cēlu (ceļos - cēlos); dodu - devu; dzeru - dzēru; laižu - laidu; ģērbju - ģerbu; kļūstu - kļuvu; lieku - liku; mostos - modos; nāku - nācu; ņemu - ņēmu; pazīstu - pazinu; pūšu - pūtu; saprotu - sapratu; skrienu - skrēju; smejos - smējos, etc. This is another reason why learning the principal parts is so important.

b. THOSE I-REG. VERBS IN WHICH NO CHANGES OCCUR USUALLY HAVE THE SAME FORM IN THE 1ST SG. PRESENT AND PAST: **saucu** I call/called, **saucos** I am/was called, **teicu** I say/said, **beidzu** I finish/finished, **lūdzu** I pray/prayed, **sniedzu** I hand/handed, **sāku** I begin/began, **atstāju** I leave/left, etc. In the case of **ēdu** (and similar verbs with -e/ē- in their base) ONLY THE SPELLING IS THE SAME; in pronunciation there is the "**broad**" vs. **normal -e-** interchange: **ēdu** I eat - **ēdu** I ate; **uzvedos** I behave - **uzvedos** I behaved.

c. ALL II. CONJUGATION VERBS HAVE THE SAME 1ST SG. FORM IN THE PAST & PRESENT TENSE: **dabūju** I get/got, **meklēju** I seek/sought, **dzīvoju** I live/lived, **mazgāju** I wash/washed, **mazgājos** I wash/washed myself, **runāju** I speak/spoke, **runājos** I converse/conversed (with), **spēlējos** I play/played (with), etc.

d. IN THE REFLEXIVE, ALSO THE 2ND SG. OF I. CONJ. STABLE BASE VOWEL & ALL II.CONJ. VERBS HAVE THE SAME FORM IN THE PRESENT AND THE PAST: **saucies** you are/were called, **uzvedies** you behave/behaved, **mazgājies** you wash/washed yourself, **spēlējies** you play/played (with), etc.

4.2.7 **ANOTHER LOOK AT THE REFLEXIVE CONJUGATION.** So far we have memorized the reflexive forms as being different from the active ones. Actually all reflexive forms can be thought of as coming from the corresponding active forms. This derivation can be made by learning few simple rules.

4.2.71 First, THE **GRAMMATICAL LENGTHENINGS** MUST BE LEARNED. They are:

short **i** lengthens to **ie**
" **u** " " **uo**, spelt "**o**"
" **a** " " **ā**

(As you know, the phonetic lengthenings of **i** & **u** are **ī** & **ū** respectively. For **a** both types of lengthening are the same.)

4.2.72 Now TWO RULES FOR **MAKING REFLEXIVE ENDINGS** can be stated:

A. Where the active ending has a short vowel alone, **LENGTHEN IT GRAMMATICALLY AND ADD -s.**

B. Everywhere else **ADD -ies.**

Let's apply these rules to all verb forms we have learned so far:

		ACTIVE:				REFLEXIVE:
PAST INDICATIVE	1.sg.	saucu	by	Rule A.	becomes	saucos
	2.sg.	sauci	"	Rule A.	"	saucies
	3.com.	sauca	"	Rule A.	"	saucās
	1.pl.	saucām	"	Rule B.	"	saucāmies
	2.pl.	saucāt	"	Rule B.	"	saucāties
FUTURE PRINCIPAL PART	3.com.	sauks	by	Rule B.	becomes	sauksies
INFINITIVE:		saukt	"	Rule B.	"	saukties
PRESENT INDICATIVE	1.sg.	saucu	by	Rule A.	becomes	saucos
	2.sg.	sauc	"	Rule B.	"	saucies
(A subrule: If the 3rd com. has no ending, ADD -as.)	3.com.	sauc	"	Spec. Rule	"	saucas
	1.pl.	saucam	"	Rule B.	"	saucamies
	2.pl.	saucat	"	Rule B.	"	saucaties
IMPERATIVE	2.sg.	sauc!	by	Rule B.	becomes	saucies!
	2.pl.	sauciet!	"	Rule B.	"	saucieties!

This derivational viewpoint for the reflexive verb forms now unifies the whole conjugation into one highly regular system.

4.2.8 SENTENCE STRUCTURES

4.2.81 A REVIEW OF DEPENDENT CLAUSES. They have these characteristics: A. they do not express a complete thought; B. they need A CLAUSE INTRODUCER; C. they do some "job" for the independent (main) clause in the sentence. **According to what type of job they do,** they are classified as adverb, adjective & noun clauses. Each type, in turn, has its subdivisions.

a. **ADVERB CLAUSES** MODIFY THE **VERBS** (as single adverbs do):

time clause: **KAD mācības beidzās, mēs gājām mājās.** WHEN the instruction ended, we went home.

condition clause: **JA Ivars mācīsies, viņs dabūs labu atzīmi.** IF I. will study, he'll get a good grade.

reason clause: **Ivars nedabūja labu atzīmi, JO viņš nemācījās.** I. didn't get a good grade BECAUSE he didn't study.

b. **ADJECTIVE CLAUSES** MODIFY THE **NOUNS**/PRONOUNS:

Viņi dzīvoja MĀJĀ, KAM bija sarkans jumts. They lived in a HOUSE THAT had a red roof.

Te ir VĀRDS, KO es nesaprotu. Here's a WORD THAT I don't understand.

VISI, KAS mācījās, dabūja labas atzīmes. ALL WHO studied got good grades.

c. **NOUN CLAUSES** SERVE AS **SUBJECTS** & **OBJECTS** for the main clause:

subject cl: **KAS mācās, (tas) dabū labas atzīmes.** WHO studies gets good grades.

object cl: **Es stāstu, KO es zinu.** I'm telling WHAT I know.

ind.obj.cl: **Dod zīmuli, KAM tu gribi.** Give the pencil to WHOMEVER you want.

prepos. obj. cl: **Vai tu redzēji, AR KO viņa runājās?** Did you see WITH WHOM she was talking?

ADDITIONAL REMARKS:

d. **THE PUNCTUATION** IS DIFFERENT in the same Latvian and English sentences. In Latvian each clause gets separated from the others under all circumstances.

e. **THE INTRODUCTORY WORDS for most dependent clauses** in the above samples are the forms of **kas**. Note their different English translations depending in what kind of clause they serve. Of course, other **k**-words (**kāds, kurš**) in all their many variant forms can serve as adjective and noun clause introducers.

f. **THE K-QUESTIONS AND K-CLAUSES ARE STRUCTURALLY THE SAME.** Look again at the depended clauses that are introduced by a **k**-word: taken alone, THEY COULD SERVE AS **K-QUESTIONS: Kad mācības beidzās?** When did the instruction end? **Kam bija sarkans jumts?** What has a red roof? **Kas mācās?** Who is studying? **Ar ko viņa runājās?** With whom did she speak? Etc. Now compare the sentence structures in the English versions of the clause and question of the same content, and you must note a great difference.

4.2.82 MORE DATIVE SUBJECT STRUCTURES. Again, at the core of their construction are certain **verbs** with idiomatic meanings.

a. **veikties** 'be proficient/good at'; 'be able to do (something) well':

Man veicas rakstīšana. I am good at writing.

Man veicas rakstīt. I can write well.

b. **iet** 'fare/do':

Man iet rakstīšana. I do well in writing.

Tur viņai gāja ļoti labi. There she was doing / fared very well.

Kā tev iet? How are you doing?

krēsliņš un gultiņa; tāda pati kumodīte ar tādām pašām atvilktnītēm; tāds pats skapītis ar tādiem pašiem plauktiņiem. Katrai istabiņai bija tāds pats lodziņš, un lodziņam priekšā tādi paši aizkariņi.

Visu dienu rūķīši sēdēja katrs savā istabiņā un taisīja mantiņas labiem bērniem. Nekas interesants nekad nenotika. Visu laiku bija tikai darbs, ēšana un gulēšana. Šis stāstiņš man likās ļoti garlaicīgs, bet skolotāja izsauca tieši mani un teica: Anna, atstāsti, ko tu nupat izlasīji! Es atstāstīju un dabūju par to labu atzīmi, bet pats stāsts man sevišķi nepatika.

Otrdien skolotāja mums uzdeva pašiem uzrakstīt stāstu, vienalga par ko. Rakstīšana man neveicas. Es nevaru neko izdomāt. Tādēļ mans stāsts arī bija par rūķīti. Šis rūķītis sēdēja savā istabiņā un taisīja mantiņas septiņreiz septiņus gadus. Kādu dienu viņš sāka domāt: Ko es te sēžu un taisu lietas, ko pats nekad nelietoju? Kā es varu zināt, ka bērni, kas šīs mantas dabūs, tiešām ir labi? Un ja arī viņi ir labi, vai viņiem šādas mantas patiks? Tas nu ir skaidrs, ka man pašam tās nepatīk nemaz.

Kad viņs teica to pašu citiem rūķīšiem, tie viņam atteica: Kas viss tev nenāk prātiņā! Tā tu kavē darbu sev pašam un mums visiem. Ej atpakaļ uz savu istabu un taisi mantiņas! Rūķi arī teica viens otram: Tā ir ļoti slikta zīme!

ar atvilktnītēm/plauktiņiem: note the dative when the prepositions take plural nouns

mantiņas 'toys'

man likās 'seemed to me'

pats stāsts 'the story itself'
sevišķi 'particularly'

par ko 'about what (topic)'

rakstīšana man neveicas 'I am not good at writing'

septiņreiz septiņus gadus 'for seven times 7 years'
kādu dienu 'some/one day'
Ko 'Why'

pats '(I) myself'

ja arī 'even if'

to pašu 'the same (thing)'

Kas viss tev nenāk prātiņā! 'What things come to your wee little mind!'
tâ tu kavē darbu sev pašam 'thus you delay your own work'

55. Skaidrs, ka viņš ir nevesels!

Bet rūķītis vairs negāja vis uz savu istabu. Viņs iegāja virtuvītē un sameklēja sev maizi, desu, sieru un veselu pudeli pilnu ar vīnu. Tad viņš atstāja mājiņu un gāja projām.

60. Nu, nu, uz kurieni tu domā skriet? Kāpēc tu paņēmi visu desu? Ko tu viens pats darīsi ar tik lielu pudeli? Tā rūķi sauca viņam pakaļ.

Es eju uz turieni! rūķītis rādīja ar degunu, jo abas rokas viņam bija pilnas.

65. Tad tu vairs netiksi atpakaļ uz šejieni, rūķi vēl sauca, bet rūķītis nemaz neklausījās. Viņš gāja tikai uz priekšu un atpakaļ neskatījās. Tā viņš gāja gan uz augšu, gan uz leju, gan uz šo pusi, gan uz to pusi, un beidzot

70. vairs nezināja, uz kuru pusi iet. Tad viņš apsēdās, apēda visu maizi, sieru un desu, izdzēra visu vīnu un likās gulēt. Kad viņš pamodās, jau bija tumša nakts. Rūķītis neko nevarēja redzēt, un viņam arī sāpēja galva. Viņš vairs nezināja,

75. ko darīt, un sāka raudāt.

Trešdien es iesniedzu savu sacerējumu skolotājai. Viņai mans stāsts nepatika. Skolotāja man teica: Te vēl stāsts nebeidzas. Kas notika ar rūķīti, kad viņš vairs neraudāja?

80. Es skolotājai teicu: Tas jau būs cits stāsts. Varbūt rūķītis raud vēl šodien. Tik un tā, labu atzīmi par šo sacerējumu es nedabūju.

skaidrs, ka '(It is) clear that'

tu domā 'do you intend (to)'

tu darīsi 'will you do'

viņam pakaļ 'after him'

gan..., gan... 'now up, now down'

uz šo pusi 'in this direction'

likās gulēt 'laid himself to sleep'

raud vēl šodien 'is still crying today'

Trešdienās mums ir arī dziedāšana. Trešdien mēs dziedājām. Es iemācījos jaunu dziesmu, ko vēl nezināju. Man patīk dziedāt, jo man ir laba balss dziedāšanai.

trešdienās 'on Wednesdays'

Ceturtdien mēs visu atkārtojām, ko pa nedēļu mācījāmies. Skolotāja vēl šo un to paskaidroja, un mēs rakstījām piezīmes. Skolotāja mums iedeva rakstu, ko ņemt līdz, mājās izlasīt un piektdien skolā atstāstīt. Rakstā bija vairāki vārdi, ko es nesapratu. Es paņēmu vārdnīcu un tajā sameklēju nozīmes.

pa nedēļu 'during the week'

ko ņemt līdz 'to take along'

Piektdien mums bija pārbaudījumi. Vispirms skolotāja mūs pārbaudīja lasīšanā. Mēs katrs lasījām vienu paragrafu (rindkopu) un to atstāstījām. Ja izlasījām nepareizi, skolotāja mūs pārlaboja un lika atkārtot.

mēs katrs 'each of us' (note that the verb agrees with mēs, not katrs)

atkārtot 'to repeat'

Tad mums bija pārbaudījums rakstīšanā. Skolotāja diktēja, un mēs klausījāmies un pierakstījām vārdus, frazes (izteicienus) un teikumus. Ar rakstīšanu man gāja labi. Diktātā man bija tikai divas kļūdas.

man gāja labi 'it went well for me'

Sestdien un svētdien mācības, protams, nenotika. Abas dienas es biju mājās un varēju darīt, kas pašai patika. Es spēlējos ar citām meitenēm, skatījos televiziju, un svētdien mēs abas ar māti uztaisījām lielas pusdienas.

mēs ar: see 4.2.92

uztaisījām 'we prepared'

Vai tev ir vēl kādi jautājumi? Anna man prasīja. - Nē, paldies par atbildēm, ko tu jau man devi, es viņai atteicu.

kādi 'any'

4.2 VOCABULARY

MASCULINE NOUNS:

darbs, darbam	work, toil, labor	**raksts, rakstam**	writing, article
diktāts, -tam	dictation	(**rūķis, rūķim**	dwarf [often **rūķītis**])
gads, gadam	year	**sacerējums,-umam**	composition
(**izteiciens,-nam**	expression, phrase)	**siers, sieram**	cheese
jautājums,-umam	question	**stāsts, stāstam**	story, tale
jumts, jumtam	roof	**teikums, -kumam**	sentence
mežs, mežam	forest, woods	**vārds, vārdam**	word; name
pārbaudījums,-am	test	**vīns, vīnam**	wine
paragrafs, -fam	paragraph	**vīrs, vīram**	man
prāts, prātam	mind, sense, intellect	**zābaks, zābakam**	boot

FEMININE NOUNS:

atbilde, -dei	answer	**pudele, -lei**	bottle
balss, balsij	voice	**pusdienas,-ām**	midday meal (pl.)
bārda, bārdai	beard	(**rindkopa, -ai**	paragraph)
dęsa, dęsai	sausage	**vārdnīca, -ai**	dictionary
dziesma, -mai	song	**zīme, zīmei**	sign, mark
fraze, frazei	phrase	**atzīme, -mei**	mark, grade
kļūda, kļūdai	mistake, error	**nozīme, -mei**	meaning
mācības, -bām	instruction (pl.)	**piezīme, -mei**	note, remark

		ADVERBIAL	FORM:	
nedēļa,-dēļai	week			
pirmdiena, -nai	Monday	**pirmdien**	on Monday	THE WEEK BEGINS WITH MONDAY. THE 6 WORKDAYS ARE COUNTED OFF: **pirmdiena** MEANS "THE FIRST DAY", AND **sestdiena** IS "THE SIXTH DAY". FINALLY COMES "THE HOLY DAY".
otrdiena, -nai	Tuesday	**otrdien**	on Tuesday	
trešdiena, -nai	Wednesday	**trešdien**	on Wednesday	
cęturtdiena,-ai	Thursday	**cęturtdien**	on Thursday	
piektdiena, -ai	Friday	**piektdien**	on Friday	
sęstdiena, -nai	Saturday	**sęstdien**	on Saturday	
svētdiena, -nai	Sunday	**svētdien**	on Sunday	

ADJECTIVES:

interesants, -ta	interesting
pareizs, pareiza	correct, right
nepareizs,-reiza	incorrect, wrong
sirms, sirma	gray
skaidrs, skaidra	clear
vęsęls, vęsęla	1.well, hale; 2.whole
nevęsęls,-sęla	unwell
vienāds, vienāda	identical, alike
maziņš, maziņa	tiny (see 4.2.31-e.

PRONOUNS:

pats, pati	-self; the very
tas pats, tā pati	the same
tāds pats, tāda pati	of the same kind, similar, alike
viens pats, viena pati	alone, by oneself
pats savs	one´s own
katrs savs	each one´s own

ADVERBS:

reiz	once, at one time	**nekad**	never	**pakaļ**	(follow) after
-reiz	(suffix) times	**nupat**	just now	**projām / prom**	away, off
		šonedēļ	this week	**tieši**	directly, exactly

PHRASAL ADVERBS:

tāpat kā	the same as, in the same way	**uz priekšu**	forward, ahead
tik un tā	all the same, anyway //as	**uz augšu**	upward, up
pa labi	to the right	**uz leju**	downward, down
pa kreisi	to the left	**uz kurieni**	where to, whither
uz kuru pusi	in which direction	**uz turieni**	to there, that way
uz ___ pusi	in ____ direction	**uz šejieni**	to here, hither

PREPOSITIONS W. ACCUSATIVE SG. (& DATIVE PL.):

ap	around	**pa**	all over, through	**pret**	against
ar	with; and	**par**	for, about	**starp**	between
gar	alongside, past	**pār**	across	**caur**	through
				uz	to, at, in (directional)

FUNCTION WORDS:

ja	intr: if	**līdz**	1.introd: until	**vienalga k__**	no matter **wh__**
ja arī	intr: even if		2.postpos: along with	**gan -- gan**	now -- now
			3.prepos: until; up to (with dat. sg. & pl.)		

V E R B S

atstāt: atstāj, atstāja, atstās	I-reg.	tr: leave, forsake
sniegt: sniedz, sniedza, sniegs	I-reg.	tr: offer, hand iesniegt hand in
teikt: teic, teica, teiks	I-reg.	tr: say; **atteikt** say in return
veikties: veicas, veicās, veiksies	I-reg.	tr/itr: do well, be good at
likties: liekas, likās, liksies	I-k/c.	itr: lay oneself down; lk: seem (.82-c.)
tikt: tiek, tika, tiks	I-k/c.	lk: get, become; itr: get, arrive
notikt: notiek, notika, notiks	I-k/c.	itr: happen, occur
mosties: mostas, modās, modīsies	I-st	itr: wake; **pamosties** wake up
saprast: saprot, saprata, sapratīs	I-i	tr/itr: understand
dabūt: dabū, dabūja, dabūs	II-ū	tr: obtain, get
domāt: domā, domāja, domās	II-ā	itr/tr: think; intend (+ infinitive);
diktēt: diktē, diktēja, diktēs	II-ē	tr: dictate //**izdomāt** figure out, invent
kavēt: kavē, kavēja, kavēs	II-ē	tr: hinder, delay
atkārtot: atkārto, -toja, -tos	II-o	tr: repeat; review
labot: labo, laboja, labos	II-o	tr: repair, correct; **pārlabot** set right
lietot: lieto, lietoja, lietos	II-o	tr: use
skaidrot: skaidro, -roja, -ros	II-o	tr: make clear; **paskaidrot** explain
dziedāt: dzied, dziedāja, dziedās	III-ā	itr/tr: sing
raudāt: raud, raudāja, raudās	III-ā	itr: weep, cry
zināt: zina, zināja, zinās	III-ā	tr/itr: know
mācīt: māca, mācīja, mācīs	III-ī	tr: teach
pārbaudīt: pārbauda, -dīja, -dīs	III-ī	tr: examine, test
prasīt: prasa, prasīja, prasīs	III-ī	tr: ask, demand

EARLIER VERBS WITH NEW PREFIXES:

uzdot	assign; give up	sameklēt	(search for and) find
izdzert	drink out/up	atstāstīt	retell
apēst	eat up	izlasīt	read (from start to finish)
izsaukt	call on (ask to perform in class)	pierakstīt	write down
		iemācīties	learn (and remember)

NOTE: This sample contains several prefixed verbs - notikt, saprast, atkārtot, pārbaudīt - whose meanings are idiomatic, that is, greatly different from the literal meanings of the prefix basic verb. For the time being, you should fill out the verb sheets just for them, except for **notikt**, which can be entered on the back page of the verb **tikt**.

NOUNS MADE FROM VERBS

THE MASCULINE NOUNS WITH **-um-s** denote an act or a result of an action.
They are derived from THE PAST PRINCIPAL PART:

teic-a	said	teik-um-s	a sentence
pārbaudīj-a	tested	pārbaudīj-um-s	a test
sacerēj-a	composed	sacerēj-um-s	a composition
jautāj-a	asked	jautāj-um-s	a question

THE FEMININE NOUNS WITH **-šan-a** denote an ongoing action.
They are derived from THE FUTURE PRINCIPAL PART:

lasīs	will read	lasīšana	reading
rakstīs	will write	rakstīšana	writing
dziedās	will sing	dziedāšana	singing
gulēs	will sleep	gulēšana	sleeping
ēdīs	will eat	ēšana	eating (a subpattern)

R-4.2 ADDITIONAL READING EXERCISES

A. PREPOSITIONS THAT TAKE THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR (4.2.1): & DATIVE PLURAL
PREPOSITION līdz TAKES THE DATIVE ALSO IN THE SINGULAR (4.2.11):

1. Anna runājās ar mani. Es runājos ar Annu un citām meitenēm. Mēs ar Annu ēdām pusdienas. Es griezu gaļu ar nazi un ēdu ar dakšiņu. Mēs griezām gaļu ar nažiem un ēdām ar dakšiņām. Mēs ēdām gaļu ar maizi. Viņs sāks mācīties ar šo pirmdienu.

2. Zēns ar meiteni stāsta tēvam ar māti par saviem skolotājiem. Meitene teica skolotājai paldies par labu atzīmi. Viņa arī mācīsies par skolotāju. Visas meitenes nemācīsies par skolotājām. Mēs lasījām stāstu par diviem brāļiem.

3. Bērni spēlējās tur pa dārzu. Kas notika pa nakti? Es skatos pa logu, kas notiek ārā. Kas nupat ienāca pa durvīm? Viss, ko tu stāstīji, Jānim bija pa vienu ausi iekšā, pa otru ārā. Kurš izlēja ūdeni pa grīdu? Pagriezieties pa kreisi!

4. Krēsls atrodas starp galdu un sienu. Dziedāšana notiks starp pulksten vieniem un diviem. Bērni skrien caur dārzu un gar māju. Es eju uz skolu gar daudzām mājām. Neskrieniet caur šo istabu! Anna sniedz man krūzi pār galdu.

5. Neskrien ar pieri pret sienu! Pagriezies pret mani! Kas nav ar mums, tas ir pret mums. Vai tu esi par vai pret šādu pārbaudījumu?

6. Uz kurieni tu pašlaik ej? Uz kuru pusi ir tavas mājas? Vai tu ej uz skolu, vai uz mājām?

mēs ar Annu 'I and Anna'

ar šo pirmdienu 'beginning this Monday'

ar here means 'and'

stāsta par 'are telling about'

paldies par 'thanks for'

mācīsies par skolotāju 'will study to be teacher'

pa dārzu 'in / all over the yard'

pa nakti 'during the night'

pa logu/durvīm 'through the window/door'

pa grīdu 'all over the floor'

pa kreisi 'to the left'

par vai pret 'for or against'

uz kuru pusi 'in what direction'

XI

LESSON 5.1

LEARNING THE GENITIVE CASE

GENITIVE FORMATIONS FROM DIFFERENT DECLENSIONAL STEMS (.1)

THE POSSESSIVE AND DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE MODIFIERS (.2)

GENITIVES WITH CERTAIN ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS (.3)

GENITIVES IN EXPRESSIONS OF LACK AND ABSENCE (.42 & .41)

GENITIVE OBJECTS WITH vajadzēt AND gribēties (.43)

QUESTIONS (& ANSWERS) THAT INVOLVE GENITIVES (.5)

VOCABULARY: WORDS THAT GO WITH GENITIVES
WORDS FOR SHOPPING SITUATIONS
MORE WORDS OF SOCIAL DESIGNATIONS
MORE MOTION VERBS

SUPPLEMENTS: THE DECLENSION CHART COMPLETED WITH GENITIVES
A LIST OF PALATALIZED & IOTACIZED NOUN FORMS
DECLENSION & CONJUGATION BLANKS FOR TESTS & EXERCISES

5.1 GRAMMAR:

5.1.1 THE FORMATION OF THE GENITIVE CASE for the nouns is scattered in four patterns, three for making the singular forms, and a common pattern for all plurals.

5.1.11 THE FEMININE a- & e-STEM NOUNS ADD THE SINGULAR ENDING -s TO THEIR STEM VOWEL: **māsa** sister -- **māsas** sister's; **māte** mother -- **mātes** mother's. Here note two things: a. This particular process is similar to that of making the **genitives in English** (except no apostrophy is used in the Latvian spelling). b. The ending **-as** & **-es** are now **being used for the third time.** (What are the other two instances?)

5.1.12 THE MASCULINE a- & i-STEM NOUNS HAVE THE SINGULAR ENDING -a: **tēvs** father -- **tēva** father's; **brālis** brother -- **brāļa** brother's.

a. THE i-STEM NOUNS PALATALIZE OR IOTACIZE THEIR BASE ENDS BEFORE THE GEN. SG. -a the same as they do in the whole plural: **brālis** brother -- **brāļa**, pl. **brāļi**; **vīrietis** man -- **vīriešā**, **vīrieši**; **nazis** knife -- **naža**, **naži**; **pulkstenis** clock -- **pulksteņa**, **pulksteņi**. THE BASE END LABIALS ADD -j-: **skapis** closet -- **skapja**, pl. **skapji**; **šķīvis** plate -- **šķīvja**, **šķīvji**, etc.

5.1.13 THE FEMININE i-STEM & MASCULINE u-STEM NOUNS REPEAT THEIR NOMINATIVE SINGULAR ENDINGS ALSO IN THE GENITIVE SINGULAR: **acs** eye -- **acs** of the eye, **plīts** stove -- **plīts** of the stove; **ledus** ice -- **ledus** of the ice, **lietus** rain -- **lietus** of rain.

a. Those few masculine i-stem nouns that have only -s (not -is) in the nom. sg., repeat this -s also in the genitive sg.: **ūdens** water -- **ūdens** of water.

5.1.14 IN THE PLURAL ALL NOUNS TAKE THE COMMON ENDING -u:
māsa -- gen. pl. **māsu** sisters' / of sisters; **tēvs** -- **tēvu** fathers' / of fathers; **ledus** -- **ledu** of ice pieces.
THE i-STEM & e-STEM NOUNS HAVE BASE END PALATALIZATIONS / IOTIZATIONS before the gen. pl. -u:

a. PALATALIZATIONS: **pudele** bottle -- gen.pl. **pudeļu**, **meitene** girl -- **meiteņu**, **glāze** glass -- **glāžu**, **bikses** pants -- **bikšu**, **sieviete** woman -- **sieviešu**, **atbilde** answer -- **atbilžu**, **skolniece** schoolgirl -- **skolnieču**, **kundze** lady -- **kundžu**; **plīts** stove -- **plīšu**, **uzacs** eyebrow -- **uzaču**; and, of course, the masculine i-stems: **brālis** brother -- **brāļu**, **pulkstenis** clock -- **pulksteņu**, **vīrietis** male -- **vīriešu**, **nazis** knife -- **nažu**, **brīdis** moment -- **brīžu**, etc.

b. SOME FEM. i-STEMS DON'T PALATALIZE. Of these we already have: **acs** eye -- **acu**, **auss** ear -- **ausu**, **brokastis** breakfast -- **brokastu**, **balss** voice -- **balsu**.

c. IOTIZATIONS: **kurpe** shoe -- **kurpju**, **drēbes** clothes -- **drēbju**, **zīme** sign -- **zīmju**; **durvis** door -- **durvju**; and, of course: **skapis** closet -- **skapju**, **šķīvis** plate -- **šķīvju**.
SEE THE SUPPLEMENT LIST for all the i- and e-stem nouns that we have had so far.

As with the other declensional cases learnt before, THE ADJECTIVES, REGULAR PRONOUNS AND REGULAR NUMERALS DO EXACTLY WHAT THE a-STEM NOUNS DO. For the non-regular formations, see again the bottom part of your declension chart -- and learn those forms by heart.

5.1.2 GENITIVES MODIFYING NOUNS. Here belong the genitives of **possession**, **description** or **origin**, and **measure** or **amount**. In this lesson we'll take up the possessive and descriptive genitives.

5.1.21 THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE indicates the possesion or ownership. This type of genitive is also common in English, where it is expressed by the ending 's (and no ending in plural): **meitenes grāmata** girl's book, **meiteņu grāmatas** girls' books; **zēna zīmulis** boy's pencil, **zēnu zīmuļi** boys' pencils.

a. Besides the three possessive pronouns **mans/mana** my, **tavs/tava** your-sg., **savs/sava** one's own, which are adjectival in their forms, THE REST OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN FORMS ARE GENITIVES:

mūsu our	**viņa** his	(ref. to	**tā** its-masc.	(ref. to
jūsu your-pl	**viņas** her	PERSONS)	**tās** its-fem.	THINGS)
	viņu their-m. & f.		**to** their-both genders	

5.1.22 THE DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE expresses a quality of one noun by means of another. In English this kind of modification is expressed in four different ways:

a. BY THE POSSESSIVE ENDING: **vīriešu kurpes** men's shoes, **meitenes dziesma** girl's song, **dienas darbs** a day's work,
b. BY THE PREPOSITION "OF": **nedēļas dienas** the days of the week, **krīta gabals** a piece of chalk, **koku lapas** leaves of the trees.
c. BY A NOUN WITH NO ENDING: **skolas grāmata** school book, **papīra krūzīte** paper cup, **lietus mētelis** rain coat, **matu krāsa** hair color.
d. BY AN ADJECTIVAL FORM: **koka krēsls** wooden chair.

Note that Latvian must express all these variations BY THE USE OF THE GENITIVE ENDINGS ONLY. Whatever the correct translations of such phrases may be in English, remember that in Latvian you're saying "week's days," "chalk's piece," "paper's cup," "rain's coat", "wood's chair", etc.

e. THE LATVIAN PHRASES FOR 'MR.' AND 'MRS.' use the surname as a descriptive genitive, which is followed by the words kungs 'Mr.' or kundze 'Mrs.' in whatever decl. case they are needed: **Berziņa kungs** 'Mr. Berziņs',
Berziņa kundzei 'for Mrs. Berziņs'.

5.1.3 PARTICLES THAT TAKE GENITIVES

5.1.31 ADVERBS OF INDEFINITE QUANTITY take genitives: **daudz maizes** much / a lot of bread, **daudz meiteņu** many / a lot of girls; **maz sviesta** little butter, **maz zēnu** few boys; **vairāk tējas** more tea, **vairāk zīmuļu** more pencils; **mazāk ūdens** less water, **mazāk grāmatu** fewer books; **drusku ledus** a (little) bit of ice, **drusku ziepju** a bit of soap.

5.1.32 PREPOSITIONS THAT TAKE GENITIVE SINGULAR (and dative plural) are another set. The complete set will be given in the next lesson. In this lesson we have: **bez manis** (mums) without me (us), **pirms ēšanas** (brokastīm) before eating (breakfast), **pēc stundas** (stundām) after an hour (hours), **dēļ tevis** (jums) for you /your sake - sg. (pl.), **pie mājas** (mājām) at the house (houses), **no veikala** (veikaliem) from the store (stores), **zem koka** (kokiem) under a tree (trees), **uz letes** (letēm) on the counter (counters).

a. Note that THE PREPOSITION uz SERVES IN BOTH SETS: **The "directional uz"** means 'to(ward)' and takes the **accusative** singular: **Es eju uz leti.** I am walking toward the counter. **Viņa skatās uz galdu.** She's looking at (= toward) the table. **The "stationary uz"** means 'on' and takes the **genitive** singular: **Preces ir uz letes.** The merchandise is on the counter. **Uz galda ir burtnīcas un zīmuļi.** On the table (there) are the notebooks and pencils.

5.1.4 GENITIVES WITH VERBS that indicate or imply an absence or lack. These genitives serve as subjects or objects depending on the structures they enter.

5.1.41 ABSENCE / LACK GENITIVES AS SUBJECTS enter structures ruled by the verbs nebūt 'not be' and trūkt 'lack, be absent' WHEN ANOTHER PART OF THE SENTENCE INCLUDES A PLACE OR TIME COMPLEMENT: **Šajā dārzā nav koku.** In this yard (there) are no trees. **Virtuvē vēl nav/trūkst ledusskapja.** In the kitchen (there) is no refrigerator. **Bērnu nebija ne mājā, ne dārzā.** (There) were no children either in the house or the yard. **Pirmdien nebūs dziedāšanas.** On Monday (there) will be no singing.

a. However, when the sentence calls for the absence verb with a NOUN OR ADJECTIVE COMPLEMENT, THE SUBJECT STAYS IN THE NOMINATIVE: **Jānis nav skolotājs.** J. is not a teacher. **Māja nebija liela.** The house was not large.

5.1.42 ABSENCE / LACK GENITIVES AS OBJECTS ENTER THE NEGATIVE POSSESSIVE STRUCTURES (whereas the positive possessive structures have the nominative objects).

POSITIVE POSSESSESSIVE STRUCTURES:	NEGATIVE POSSESSIVE STRUCTURES:
Man ir nauda. I have money.	**Man nav naudas.** I don't have money.
Šai meitenei ir divi brāļi. This girl has two brothers.	**Tai meitenei nav brāļu.** That girl has no brothers.
Logiem bija aizkari. The windows had curtains.	**Logiem nebija aizkaru.** The windows had no curtains.
Mums būs viss kas. We'll have all kinds of things.	**Jums nebūs nekā.** You'll have nothing. / You won't have anything.

a. Since the verb trūkt implies not having someting needful, it can be used (instead of nebūt) wherever the lack and the need is stressed: **Man trūkst naudas. Logiem trūka aizkaru. Jums trūks visa kā.** You'll lack everything.

b. The verb **trūkt** can be an ACTION VERB with a different meaning: **Diegs trūkst.** The thread snaps apart. (BUT: **Diega trūkst.** There is a lack of thread.)

5.1.43 VERBS IMPLYING LACK TAKE GENITIVE OBJECTS. In these structures, too, THE SUBJECTS ARE IN THE DATIVE: **Man vajag** naudas. I need money. **Viņai vajadzēs** palīga. She'll need help. **Kā tev gribas?** What do you desire/want? **Man gribas vēsas sulas.** I desire/want some cool juice.

5.1.5 QUESTIONS (AND ANSWERS) THAT INVOLVE GENITIVES. They relate to the genitive uses described above.

5.1.51 Kā 'WHOSE' INTRODUCES QUESTIONS WHOSE ANSWERS CONTAIN POSSESSIVE GENITIVES:

Q. **Kā zīmulis tas ir?** Whose pencil is it?
A. **Tas ir Jāņa zīmulis.** It is John's pencil.
  Q. **Kā mājai ir sarkans jumts?** Whose house has a red roof?
  A. **Mūsu mājai ir sarkans jumts.** Our house has a red roof.

5.1.52 Kā nav/trūkst ELICITS ABSENCE/LACK GENITIVES IN THE ANSWERS:

Q. **Kā tev nav/trūkst?** What do you not have / lack?
A. **Man nav/trūkst naudas.** I don't have / lack money.
  Q. **Kā nebija mājā?** Who wasn't in the house?
  A. **Bērnu nebija mājā.** The children weren't in the house.
Q. **Kā viņiem nebūs/trūks rīt?** What will they not have / lack tomorrow?
A. **Rīt viņiem nekā netrūks.** Tomorrow they will lack nothing.

5.1.53 Kāds, kāda ELICITS DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVES IN THE ANSWERS:

Q. **Kāda ir tā gulta?** What kind of bed is that?
A. **Tā ir koka gulta.** That is a wooden bed.
  Q. **Kādu mēteli tu pirksi?** What kind of coat will you buy?
  A. **Es pirkšu lietus mēteli.** I'll buy a rain coat.
Q. **Kādā veikalā pārdod sviestu?** In what kind of store butter is sold.
A. **Sviestu pārdod pārtikas veikalā.** Butter is sold in the grocery store.

a. Remember that these are adjectival questions that can elicit **adjectives** in the answers; see 3.1.42.

5.1.54 Cik 'HOW MUCH/MANY' FOLLOWED BY A NOUN PUTS THAT NOUN IN THE GENITIVE: **Cik brāļu un māsu tev ir?** How many brothers and sisters do you have? **Cik (daudz) sviesta un gaļas māte nopirka?** How much butter and meat did mother buy? **Cik naudas tev ir kabatā?** How much money do you have in your pocket?

5.1.6 MISCELLANEOUS NOTES

5.1.61 **Kāds, kāda** CAN BE A NOUN MODIFIER meaning 'a/an', 'a certain', 'some': **Kāds zēns ir pie durvīm.** A/Some boy is at the door. **Es gribu pirkt kādu kleitu.** I want to buy some/a dress.

a. USED ALONE, **kāds,-a** MEANS 'SOMEONE', 'SOME': **Kāds ir pie durvīm.** Someone is at the door. **Te ir grāmatas: paņem kādu un palasi.** Here are books: take some and read.

b. **Nekāds, nekāda** IS AN EMPHATIC NEGATIVE meaning 'no (kind of)', 'not a ___ (at all): **Viņa nav nekāda skolniece.** She's no (kind of) student. / She's not a student (at all).

5.1.62 SECOND POINTERS are needed to pinpoint the meanings of the verbal prefixes. With the motion verbs the most basic pointers (#1. or 2.) are used. They repeat not only the basic meanings of the prefixes but also their forms as free prepositions: **pieiet pie** come near/at. Study the 2nd page of your verb sheets for an overview.

R-5.1 MŪSU SESTDIENAS RĪTA BRAUCIENS

Ko jūsu ģimene darīja šajā nedēļas nogalē? es Silvijai prasīju. Silvija man pastāstīja: Sestdienas rītā visa mūsu ģimene brauca iepirkties. Mums katram kaut kā vajadzēja. Man pašai bija vajadzīgs lietus mētelis, kāds pāris vasaras kurpju, kā arī daži apģērba gabali. Mātei arī vajadzēja silta laika drēbju, un viņa vēl gribēja šo un to apskatīties dēļ virtuves. Tēvs gribēja pirkt automašīnas riepas un dažus dārza rīkus. Brālis, kā parasti, domāja izpirkt vismaz pus veikala ar savu kabatas naudu.

Es gribēju braukt uz veikaliem jau piektdienas vakarā, bet vecākiem piektdien vēl nebija laika. Tā mēs aizbraucām tikai sestdienas rītā un veikalos pavadījām labu dienas daļu. Mēs izbraucām no mājas drīz pēc pulksten deviņiem un bijām atkal atpakaļ īsi pirms diviem.

Mēs braucām uz lielu veikalu centru, kur varēja dabūt visu ko. Kā izkāpām no automašīnas, tā mēs ar māti aizgājām uz vienu pusi un tēvs ar brāli uz otru.

Vispirms mēs iegājām lielā universālveikalā. Tur katrā nodaļā pārdeva citas preces. Pašā priekšā bija vīriešu apģērbu un apavu nodaļas. Tālāk uz priekšu bija sieviešu drēbju un kurpju nodaļas. Mēs gājām no vienas nodaļas otrā un visu ko dēļ sevis meklējām.

3 genitives in this phrase

nedēļas nogale 'weekend'

brauca iepirkties 'went shopping'

vajadzēja/vajadzīgs: the verb & adjective each effect different sentence structures

vēl 'besides'

dēļ virtuves 'for the kitchen'

kā parasti 'as usual'

īsi 'shortly'

Kā - tā 'As soon as - (so)'

tālāk uz priekšu 'further on'

dēļ sevis 'for ourselves'

Gandrīz tūlīt es atradu kurpes, kas man patika. Tad es sameklēju tām pieskaņotu rokas somu.

Tomēr es notērēju daudz laika, kamēr atradu bikšu pāri, kas man ne tikai derēja un piestāvēja, bet arī nebija pārāk dārgs. Pa šo laiku es pirkos viena pati bez mātes. Man parasti veicas labāk, kad neviens nepalīdz.

Vēl tālāk veikalā notika blūžu, kleitu un apakšveļas izpārdošana. Tur bija liels bars sieviešu. Dažām jau bija pilnas rokas visādu drēbju, bet viņas vēl turpināja kaut ko tur meklēt. Vēl gribēja kaut kā vairāk. Kad tiku klāt pie blūzēm, maz atradu tādu, kas bija mana lieluma. Drīz es no turienes aizgāju.

Es gāju uz veikala otru galu meklēt māti. Kamēr es skatījos uz citu pusi, viņa jau pamanīja mani, pienāca pie manis un jautāja: No kurienes tu pašlaik nāc? Vai tu sapirki visu, kā tev vajadzēja?

Es viņai atteicu: Man vēl vajag vienas blūzes, un tad manas pirkšanas būs galā. No šejienes es tagad eju uz citiem veikaliem.

Tā es atkal atstāju māti virtuves trauku nodaļā un pati gāju no viena veikala otrā, meklēt blūzi. Beidzot es iegāju mazā veikaliņā, centra malā vienā sānielā, un tur atradu divas blūzes, kas man patika un derēja! Es paņēmu abas, aiznesu uz leti un uzliku uz letes.

tām pieskaņotu 'matching them (shoes)'

veicas labāk 'do better / (am) more successful'

vēl 'still'

kaut kā vairāk 'more of something'

tiku <u>klāt pie</u> 'I got <u>near / within the reach of</u>'

galā 'at the end'

<u>uz</u> let<u>i</u> '<u>to</u> the counter'

<u>uz</u> let<u>es</u> '<u>on</u> the counter'

56. Pārdevēja apskatīja cenu zīmes; saskaitīja, cik abas blūzes maksā, un es par tām samaksāju naudā.

Es vairs pati neatcerējos, cik ilgi biju veikalos. Nu vajadzēja iet uz mašīnu, jo citi varbūt

60. jau gaidīja tikai uz mani. Es pamanīju māti uz ielas pie pārtikas veikala, bet tēvs ar brāli jau tiešām mūs gaidīja pie automašīnas. Brālis stāstīja: Es iztērēju visu naudu. Man vairs nav ne dolāra kabatā, tikai pāris centu!

65. Mums vēl bija drusku laika, un mēs sarunājām ieiet kādā ēdienu veikalā un kaut ko ieēst pirms braukšanas mājās. Tā arī izdarījām, jo visiem gribējās ēst. Ēdienu veikalā pie letes dabūjām kādus ēdienus un dzērienus, apsēdāmies pie galda

70. un paēdām. Pēc ēšanas mēs tūlīt braucām mājās. Šoreiz māte vadīja mašīnu, un tēvs sēdēja pie manis aizmugures sēdeklī.

Tikai kad jau bijām gandrīz pie mājām, es atcerējos, ka nenopirku lietus mēteli. Es aiz-

75. mirsu sev nopirkt lietus mēteli! es iesaucos. Nu, nekas, tēvs man teica, tu vēl iztiksi pāris nedēļu bez jauna mēteļa. Varbūt pa šo laiku lietus nemaz neīs.

cenu zīmes 'price tags'

naudā 'in cash'

(man) vajadzēja iet '(I) had to go'

gaidīja uz mani 'were waiting for me'

ne dolāra 'not (even) a dollar'

kādā ēdienu veikalā 'in a diner'

visiem gribējās ēst 'everybody was hungry'

vadīja mašīnu 'drove / steered the car'

pie manis 'with me'

gandrīz pie mājām 'almost home'

nu, nekas 'well, it does not matter'

R-5.1 VOCABULARY

NOUNS - MASCULINE:

persons:

vīrietis, -tim	man, male
brālēns, -nam	masc. cousin
kungs, kungam	lord, Mr.
palīgs, -līgam	masc. helper, aide

nouns from verbs:

vadītājs,-tājam	leader; manager
pārdevējs,-ējam	sales clerk
brauciens,-ienam	drive, trip
ēdiens, ēdienam	food
dzēriens, -ienam	drink

materials:

koks, kokam	wood
papīrs, papīram	paper
metāls, metālam	metal

miscellaneous nouns:

apavi, apaviem	footwear
apģērbs, -bam	clothing
bars, baram	crowd
centrs, centram	center
cents, centam	cent
dolārs, dolāram	dollar
dvielis, -lim	towel
gabals, gabalam	piece
gals, galam	end; tip
krīts, krītam	chalk
lielums, -umam	size
lietus, lietum	rain
pāris, pārim	pair
pāris adv.	a few, a pair
sēdeklis,-eklim	seat
veikals, -lam	store
ēdienu veikals	diner
pārtikas veikals	grocery store
universālveikals	department store

NOUNS - FEMININE:

sieviete, -tei	woman, female
māsīca, -sīcai	fem. cousin
kundze, kundzei	lady, Mrs.
palīdze, -dzei	fem. helper, aide
vadītāja, -tājai	fem. leader, manager
pārdevēja, -ējai	fem. sales clerk
braukšana, -šanai	driving
pirkšana, -šanai	buying
izpārdošana,-šanai	sale
drēbe, drēbei	cloth, fabric
āda, ādai	leather; fur; skin
plastmasa, -masai	plastic

miscellaneous nouns:

cena, cenai	price
cenas zīme	price tag
daļa, daļai	part, portion
firma, firmai	firm, company
ģimene, -enei	family
iela, ielai	street
sāniela,-ai	side street
kabata, -tai	pocket
lete, letei	counter
mašīna, mašīnai	machine, engine; car
automašīna	motor vehicle, car
kravas (auto)mašīna	"cargo vehicle", truck, van
naûda, naûdai	money
nodaļa, -ļai	section, department
nogale, -lei (nedēļas)	weekend
pārtika, -kai	food(stuffs), provisions
prece, precei	article/thing for sale
riepa, riepai	tire
tāfele, -lei	chalkboard, blackboard
vasara, -rai	summer

PRONOUNS:

nekâds, nekâda	no, not a
kaut kas	something
viss kas	all kinds of things
viss kas cits	everything else

ADJECTIVES:

dārgs, dārga	dear, expensive
pieskaņots,-ota	matching
vajadzīgs, -īga	needed, necessary

ADVERBS:

daudz	much
vairâk	more
maz	little, few
mazāk	less
drusku	a little, a bit
labâk	better
pārâk	too, overly
tālâk	further
vismaz	at least
gandrīz	almost, nearly
tomēr	still, nevertheless
klāt	near, close; present
pavisam	in sum/all; totally
no kurienes	where from, whence
no turienes	from there
no šejienes	from here

FUNCTION WORDS:

cik	intr: how much/many
kamēr	intr: while
ne tikai - bet arī	conj: not only - but also

Some PREPOSITIONS that take GENITIVE SINGULAR (and dative plural):

bez	without; besides	**dēļ**	for (the sake of)	**zem**	under
pirms	before	**pie**	at, near, beside, by	**uz**	on (note the meaning change)
pēc	after	**no**	from, out of		

V E R B S:

aizbraukt go to; **izbraukt** leave, set out

braukt: brauc, brauca, brauks	I-reg.	itr: travel (in a vehicle, ride
nest: nes, nesa, nesīs	I-reg.	tr: tote, carry (in arms); **aiznest** take to
vest: ved, veda, vedīs	I-reg.	tr: carry (in a vehicle); **atvest** carry hither
rast: rod, rada, radīs	I-reg.	tr: find; mostly **atrast** find
rasties: rodas, radās, radīsies	I-reg.	itr: come into being; **ierasties** show up
pārdôt: pārdôd, pārdeva, pārdôs	I-reg.	tr: sell; **izpārdot** put on sale
iztikt: iztiek, iztika, iztiks	I-k/c	tr/itr: manage (to do), get by
pirkt: pērk, pirka, pirks	I-k/c	tr: buy, purchase; **izpirkt** buy out; **nopirkt** buy; **sapirkt** buy a quantity
pirkties: pērkas, pirkās, pirksies	I-k/c	tr/itr: shop; **iepirkties** do/go shopping
aizmirst: aizmirst, aizmirsa, aizmirsīs	I-st	tr: forget
līt: līst, lija, līs	I-st	itr: pour; rain
trūkt: trūkst, trūka, trūks	I-st	itr: snap apart; tr (w. gen. object): lack
maksât: maksā, maksāja, maksâs	II-ā	itr: cost; tr: pay (for); **samaksāt** pay
strādât: strādā, strādāja, strādâs	II-ā	itr/tr: work
tērêt: tērē, tērēja, tērês	II-ē	tr: spend; waste; **iztērēt** spend/waste all; **notērēt** use up
turpinât: turpina, turpināja, turpinâs	III-ā	tr/itr: continue
atcerêties: atceras, atcerējās, atcerêsies	III-ē	tr/itr: remember
derēt: der, derēja, derēs	III-ē	itr/tr: fit, be suitable/useful
gribêties: gribas, gribējās, gribêsies	III-ē	tr (w. gen. obj.): desire, want
palīdzêt: palīdz, palīdzēja, palīdzês	III-ē	tr (w. dat. obj.): help, aid
vajadzêt: vajag, vajadzēja, vajadzês	III-ē	tr (w. gen. obj.): have a need of
gaidît: gaida, gaidīja, gaidīs	III-ī	tr/itr: wait (for); **pagaidīt** wait a // little
manît: mana, manīja, manīs	III-ī	tr: perceive, notice; **pamanīt** espy, notice
vadīt: vada, vadīja, vadīs	III-ī	tr: lead, conduct, guide; drive (a car) **pavadīt** accompany; pass/spend time

Earlier verbs with NEW PREFIXES:

ieiet	walk in, enter	pastāstīt	tell, recount
ieēst	have a bite/snack	paēst	eat one's full
iesaukties	exclaim (suddenly)	izkāpt	climb out; get off (a vehicle)
pienākt	come up to, approach	izdarīt	accomplish, carry out, do

n o u n s f r o m v e r b s:

past pr. part:	**brauca**	drove, went	**braucIens**	a drive, trip
" " "	**ēda**	ate	**ēdIens**	food
" " "	**dzēra**	drank	**dzērIens**	a drink
past pr. part:	**pārdeva**	sold	**pārdevējs/pārdevēja**	seller, sales clerk
infinitive:	**vadīt**	to manage	**vadītājs/vadītāja**	manager
future pr. pt.	**brauks**	will drive	**braukšana**	driving
" " "	**pirks**	will buy	**pirkšana**	buying, purchasing
" " "	**izpārdos**	will put on sale	**izpārdošana**	sale

5.1 ADDITIONAL READING EXERCISES

A. MOSTLY POSSESSIVE GENITIVES:

1. Jānis un Anna ir brālis un māsa. Jānis ir Annas brālis, un Anna ir Jāņa māsa. Ilze un Ilga ir māsas. Ilze ir Ilgas māsa, un Ilga ir Ilzes māsa. Aivars un Ivars ir brāļi. Aivars ir Ivara brālis, un Ivars ir Aivara brālis. Ingrīda un Kristīne ir draudzenes. Ingrīda ir Kristīnes draudzene, un Kristīne ir Ingrīdas draudzene. Alberts un Uldis ir draugi. Alberts ir Ulža draugs, un Uldis ir Alberta draugs.

2. Jānim un Annai ir brālēns un māsīca. Viņi saucas Ēriks un Ērika. Ēriks ir Ērikas brālis, un Ērika ir Ērika māsa. Ēriks ir Jāņa un Annas brālēns. Ērika ir Jāņa un Annas māsīca. Jānis ir Ērika un Ērikas brālēns. Anna ir Ērika un Ērikas māsīca. Kurš ir jūsu brālēns, un kura ir jūsu māsīca? es prasīju Ērikam un Ērikai. Ēriks ar Ēriku man atbildēja: Jānis un Anna ir mūsu brālēns un māsīca.

3. Kā mantas ir te uz šī galda? Tās ir skolnieku un skolnieču mantas. Zēnu burtnīcas ir uz tā otra galda. Tas ir skolotāja galds. Skolotājs skatījās zēnu burtnīcās un meklēja kļūdas. Viņu sacerējumos parasti ir daudz kļūdu. Meiteņu burtnīcas ir viņu somās. Katras meitenes somā ir arī viņas grāmatas un spalvas. Abu brāļu, Aivara un Ivara grāmatas ir zem galda, jo uz galda viņiem ir viss kas cits. Abu draudzeņu, Ingrīdas un Kristīnes grāmatas ir uz galda. Abu māsu, Ilgas un Ilzes grāmatas ir tur uz tā galda.

kā whose

Tas ir Ilzes zīmulis; tas ir viņas zīmulis. Un tas ir Uliža zīmulis; tas ir viņa zīmulis. Tie ir Ilzes un Uliža zīmuļi; tie ir viņu zīmuļi. Kas tas ir tur pie tāfeles uz grīdas? Tas ir krīta gabals. Kā krīts tas ir? Tas ir skolotāja vai skolotājas krīts. Parasti tas atrodas viņu galda atvilktnē, ne uz grīdas.

B. MOSTLY DESCRIPTIVE AND ABSENCE GENITIVES:

4. Ērika un Ērikas vecāki saucas Bērziņa kungs un Bērziņa kundze. Bērziņa kungs ir nodaļas vadītāja palīgs kādā mēbeļu firmā. Bērziņa kundze strādā par pārdevēju lielā veikala apģērbu nodaļā. Tur viņa pārdod bērniņu drēbītes.

par 'as a'

Pirms kāda gada Bērziņi nopirka jaunu māju. Tās dienas rītā, kad Bērziņu ģimene ieradās, māja vēl bija pavisam tukša. Tajā vēl nekā nebija. Istabās nebija nekādu mēbeļu. Viesistabā nebija ne dīvāna, ne krēslu, ne televizora, ne grāmatu skapja, ne arī pašu grāmatu. Ēdamistabā nebija galda, krēslu un trauku skapja. Virtuves atvilktnes un plaukti bija tukši. Tajos vēl nebija ne glāžu, tašu un apakštašu; ne nažu, dakšiņu un karošu; ne arī citu rīku un trauku. Ledusskapī trūka pārtikas: tur nebija gaļas, desu, sviesta, piena, maizes un visa kā cita. Ledusskapja augšas daļā vēl nebija ledus. Trūka arī karsta ūdens. Vannas istabā nebija ne ziepju, ne dvieļu, ne kādu citu mantu. Guļamistabās vēl trūka gultu un kumožu. Tāpat drēbju skapjos vēl nebija nekādu drēbju. Ap pusdienas laiku pie mājas piebrauca ļoti liela kravas automašīna un atveda visu ko, kā mājā trūka.

pirms kāda gada 'a year or so ago'

nebija nekādu '(there) weren't any'

kā trūka 'that was lacking'

FEMININE e-STEM & i-STEM NOUNS (Lessons 2.1 through 5.1)

NOM. SG.	GEN. SG.	DAT. SG.	GEN. PL.	
aizmugure	aizmugures	aizmugurei	aizmuguru/-ņu	rear
atbilde	atbildes	atbildei	atbilžu	answer
atvilktne	atvilktnes	atvilktnei	atvilktņu	drawer
bikses-pl.		biksēm-pl.	bikšu	trousers
blūze	blūzes	blūzei	blūžu	blouse
cepure	cepures	cepurei	cepuru/-ņu	hat
draudzene	draudzenes	draudzenei	draudzeņu	girlfriend
drēbe	drēbes	drēbei	drēbju	cloth(es)
fraze	frazes	frazei	fražu	phrase
glāze	glāzes	glāzei	glāžu	glass (drinking)
ģimene	ģimenes	ģimenei	ģimeņu	family
izlietne	izlietnes	izlietnei	izlietņu	sink
karote	karotes	karotei	karošu	spoon
klase	klases	klasei	klašu	class(room)
krūze	krūzes	krūzei	krūžu	pitcher
kumode	kumodes	kumodei	kumožu	chest of drawers
kundze	kundzes	kundzei	kundžu	lady, Mrs.
kurpe	kurpes	kurpei	kurpju	shoe
lete	letes	letei	(lešu)	counter
maize	maizes	maizei	maižu	bread
māte	mātes	mātei	māšu	mother
mēbele	mēbeles	mēbelei	mēbeļu	furniture
meitene	meitenes	meitenei	meiteņu	girl
minūte	minūtes	minūtei	minūšu	minute
mute	mutes	mutei	(mušu/-tu?)	mouth
palīdze	palīdzes	palīdzei	palīdžu	helper-fem.
piere	pieres	pierei	pieru/-ņu	forehead
prece	preces	precei	preču	ware
pudele	pudeles	pudelei	pudeļu	bottle
puse	puses	pusei	pušu	side
sieviete	sievietes	sievietei	sieviešu	woman
skolniece	skolnieces	skolniecei	skolnieču	schoolgirl
tāfele	tāfeles	tāfelei	tāfeļu	chalkboard
tase	tases	tasei	tašu	cup
virtuve	virtuves	virtuvei	virtuvju	kitchen
zeķe	zeķes	zeķei	zeķu	sock
ziepes-pl.		ziepēm-pl.	ziepju	soap
zīme	zīmes	zīmei	zīmju	sign
žakete	žaketes	žaketei	(žaketu/-šu?)	jacket
acs	acs	acij	acu	eye
auss	auss	ausij	ausu	ear
balss	balss	balsij	balsu	voice
brokastis-pl.		brokastīm-pl.	brokastu	breakfast
debess	debess	debesij	dębęsu	sky
durvis-pl.		durvīm-pl.	durvju	door
nakts	nakts	naktij	nakšu	night
plīts	plīts	plītij	plīšu	stove
uzacs	uzacs	uzacij	uzaču	eyebrow

MASCULINE i-STEM NOUNS (Lessons 2.1 through 5.1)

NOM. SG.	GEN. SG.	DAT. SG.	WHOLE PL.	
brālis	brāļa	brālim	brāļi, etc.	brother
brīdis	brīža	brīdim	brīži, etc.	moment
(bruncis	brunča	bruncim)	brunči, etc.	skirt
dvielis	dvieļa	dvielim	dvieļi, etc.	towel
ķermenis	ķermeņa	ķermenim	ķermeņi, etc.	body (living)
mētelis	mēteļa	mētelim	mēteļi, etc.	overcoat
nazis	naža	nazim	naži, etc.	knife
pāris	pāra/-ŗa	pārim	pāri/-ŗi, etc.	pair
pulkstenis	pulksteņa	pulkstenim	pulksteņi, etc.	watch, clock
rūķis	rūķa	rūķim	rūķi, etc.	dwarf
sēdeklis	sēdekļa	sēdeklim	sēdekļi, etc.	seat
skapis	skapja	skapim	skapji, etc.	closet
spogulis	spoguļa	spogulim	spoguļi, etc.	mirror
šķīvis	šķīvja	šķīvim	šķīvji, etc.	plate
zīmulis	zīmuļa	zīmulim	zīmuļi, etc.	pencil
ūdens	ūdens	ūdenim	ūdeņi, etc.	water
vīrietis	vīrieša	vīrietim	vīrieši, etc.	man, male

For the palatalizations and iotizations
see 5.1.12, note a., 5.1.14, notes a. & c.
and also 4.1.6 the right hand columns.

ADDITIONAL NOTES:

1. If the base end is already palatalized in the nominative singular (**zeķe**, **rūķis**), then this palatalization is carried over to all other declensional cases.
2. Since we do not palatalize the **ŗ**, the nouns with the base end **-r-** are without any change.
3. The noun **ūdens** belongs to a small soubgroup that has the ending **-s** both in the nominative and genitive singular. Beginning with the dative singular, it follows the regular masculine i-stem pattern.

GENITIVES ADDED

WRITE-IN DECLENSION CHART

NOUNS:	MASC. a-stem	MASC. i-stem	MASC. u-stem	FEM. a-stem	FEM. e-stem	FEM. i-stem
SINGULAR						
nom.kas?	k o k s	skap i s	l e d u s	m ā j a	virtuv e	plīt s
gen.kā?	*k o k a*	*skapj a*	*l e d u s*	*m ā j a s*	*virtuv e s*	*plīt s*
dat.kam?	k o k a m	skap i m	l e d u m	m ā j a i	virtuv e i	plīt i j
acc.ko?	k o k u	skap i	l e d u	m ā j u	virtuv i	plīt i
loc.kur?	k o k ā	skap ī	l e d ū	m ā j ā	virtuv ē	plīt ī
PLURAL	all masc.adjs., reg.prons.&nums. are a-stem decl.			all fem.adjs., reg.prons.&nums. are a-stem decl.		
nom.kas?	k o k i	skapj i	l e d i	m ā j a s	virtuv e s	plīt i s
gen.kā?	*k o k u*	*skapj u*	*l e d u*	*m ā j u*	*virtuvj u*	*plīš u*
dat.kam?	k o k iem	skapj iem	l e d iem	m ā j ā m	virtuv ē m	plīt ī m
acc.ko?	k o k u s	skapj u s	l e d u s	m ā j a s	virtuv e s	plīt i s
loc.kur?	k o k o s	skapj o s	l e d o s	m ā j ā s	virtuv ē s	plīt ī s

SPECIAL DECLENSION PATTERNS

SINGULAR	'that' masc.	'that' fem.	'this' masc.	'this' fem.	'I'	'you-sg.'	'-self' (refl.)	'(the very) -self' masc.	'(the very) -self' fem.
nom.kas?	tas,	tā	šis,	šī	es	tu	- - -	pats,	pati
gen.kā?	*tā,*	*tās*	*šī,*	*šīs*	*manis*	*tevis*	*sevis*	*paša*	*pašas*
dat.kam?	tam,	tai	šim,	šai	man	tev	sev	pašam	pašai
acc.ko?	to		šo		mani	tevi	sevi	pašu	
loc.kur?	tajā		šajā		manī	tevī	sevī	etc. (reg. a-stem forms)	

PLURAL	'those' m.	'those' f.	'these' m.	'these' f.	'we'	'you-pl.'	(no pl.)	'three' masc.	'three' common	'three' fem.
nom.kas?	tie,	tās	šie,	šīs	mēs	jūs	- - -		trīs	
gen.kā?	*to*		*šo*		*mūsu*	*jūsu*	- - -		*triju*	
dat.kam?	tiem,	tām	šiem,	šīm	mums	jums	- - -	trijiem,		trijām
acc.ko?	tos,	tās	šos,	šīs	mūs	jūs	- - -		trīs	
loc.kur?	tajos,	tajās	šajos,	šajās	mūsos	jūsos	- - -	trijos,		trijās

XII

LESSON 5.2

LEARNING THE FUTURE TENSE
MAKING NUMBERS PHRASES

THE FUTURE TENSE FORMATION AND CONJUGATION EXAMPLES (.1)

THE CARDINAL NUMBERS DERIVATION AND PHRASE STRUCTURES (.2)

AMOUNT AND MEASURE GENITIVES (.3)

DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVES WITH GEOGRAPHIC NAMES (.41)

THE GENITIVE SINGULAR (DAT. PL.) PREPOSITION SET (.42)

EXPRESSIONS OF WELL BEING WITH iet AND klāties (.51)

STATE OF BEING EXPRESSIONS WITH ADVERB COMPLEMENTS (.52)

STRUCTURES WITH THE VERB pietikt (.53)

TELLING MINUTES TO AND PAST THE HOUR / HALF HOUR (.54)

VOCABULARY: MEANS OF TRAVEL
NAMES OF GEOGRAPHIC FEATURES

SUPPLEMENTS: NAMES OF AMOUNTS AND MEASURES
SELECTED NORTH AMERICAN PLACE NAMES

5.2 GRAMMAR:

5.2.1 **THE FUTURE TENSE.** There are no irregular forms in the future tense conjugation. **Two sets** of conjugational endings are used, one for the **active** and one for the **reflexive** verbs. In both sets the actual ending is preceded by the future marker -s-, which gets palatalized to -š- in the 1st person singular.

PERSONS:	**ACTIVE** SET:	**REFLEXIVE** SET:	
1st sg.	-š-u	-š-os	(u -- o + s = os by Rule A, see 4.2.7)
2nd sg.	-s-i	-s-ies	(i -- ie + s = ies " Rule A.)
3rd com.	-s	-s-ies	(+ ies = ies " Rule B.)
1st pl.	-s-im	-s-imies	(im + ies = imies " Rule B.)
2nd pl.	-s-it	-s-ities	(it + ies = ities " Rule B.)

As shown in the parentheses above, all the reflexive forms can be derived from the corresponding active forms by the use of two rules explained in 4.2.7.

In Latvia the 2nd pl. forms act. -siet and refl. -sieties are being used.

5.2.11 FUTURE TENSE SAMPLE OF THE I. CONJUGATION VERBS:

	I-ļ/l	I-bj/b	I-k/c	I-reg.	I-reg.	I-bj/b	I-ļ/l
1.sg.	celšu	ģērbšu	likšu	saukšu	saukšos	ģērbšos	celšos
2.sg.	celsi	ģērbsi	liksi	sauksi	sauksies	ģērbsies	celsies
3.com.	cels	ģērbs	liks	sauks	sauksies	ģērbsies	celsies
1.pl.	celsim	ģērbsim	liksim	sauksim	sauksimies	ģērbsimies	celsimies
2.pl.	celsit	ģērbsit	liksit	sauksit	sauksities	ģērbsities	celsities

c. When the numbers are expressed without nouns, THE MASCULINE FORMS of **viens** to **deviņi** are used (in counting, ratios, etc. -- see above).

5.2.22 **NUMBERS WITH NOUNS IN GENITIVE.** All indeclinable numbers with **-padsmit** and **-desmit** (all that end in **-smit**) make the nouns take the **genitive plural** instead of the nominative or accusative.

DECLINABLE NUMBER + NOUN in **NOM./ACC.**	INDECLINABLE NUMBER + NOUN in **GEN.**(PL.)
Te ir pieci zēni. Here are 5 boys.	**Te ir desmit zēnu.** Here are 10 boys.
Es redzu piecus zēnus. I see 5 boys.	**Es redzu desmit zēnu.** I see 10 boys.
Te ir divas meitenes. Here are 2 girls.	**Te ir divdesmit meiteņu.** Here are 20 girls.
Es redzu divas meitenes. I see 2 girls.	**Es redzu divdesmit meiteņu.** I see 20 girls.
Te ir divdesmit četri cimdi. Here are 24 gloves.	**Te ir četrpadsmit cimdu.** Here are 14 gloves.
Es apskatu divdesmit četrus cimdus. I examine 24 gloves.	**Es apskatu četrpadsmit cimdu.** I examine 14 gloves.
Te ir piecdesmit sešas zeķes. Here are 56 socks.	**Te ir sešpadsmit zeķu.** Here are 16 socks.
Viņa mazgāja piecdesmit sešas zeķes. She washed 56 socks.	**Viņa mazgāja sešpadsmit zeķu.** She washed 16 socks.

The use of the genitive with indeclinable numbers is **OVERRULED** IN TWO INSTANCES:

a. IF A DECLINABLE MODIFIER PRECEDES the indeclinable number, the noun assumes **its normal case ending:**

Te ir VISI desmit zēni. Here are ALL ten boys.
Es redzu VISUS desmit zēnus. I see ALL ten boys.
Viņa mazgāja ŠOS četrpadsmit cimdus un TĀS sešpadsmit zeķes. She washed THESE 14 gloves and THOSE 16 socks.

b. WHEN THE DATIVE OR LOCATIVE CASE IS CALLED FOR, **it cannot be altered:**

desmit zēniem un divdesmit meitenēm for 10 boys and 20 girls
četrpadsmit cimdos un sešpadsmit zeķēs in 14 gloves and 16 socks

5.2.3 **AMOUNT AND MEASURE GENITIVES** structure themselves in the fashion described above: Nouns that designate amount or measure units take other nouns (in the genitive case) as their **modifiers**. These genitives, however, must be placed AFTER THE NOUNS THEY MODIFY. Thus, they are structural opposites to the descriptive (or even possessive) genitives, which precede their modified nouns:

DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVES (precede):		AMOUNT/MEASURE GENITIVES (follow):	
ūdens glāze	water glass	**glāze ūdens**	a glass of water
tējas tase	teacup	**tase tējas**	a cup of tea
piena pudele	milk bottle	**pudele piena**	a bottle of milk
kafijas burka	coffee jar	**burka kafijas**	a jar(ful) of coffee

EXACT MEASURES are handled similarly: **mārciņa sviesta** a pound of butter, **divi galoni sulas** two gallons of juice, etc.

a. THE AMOUNT/MEASURE GENITIVES NEVER CHANGE once they are placed in such phrases. The modified noun itself, however, may be in **any** declensional case:

NOM:	**tase tējas**	a cup of tea	**divi galoni piena**	2 gallons of milk
GEN:	**tases tējas**	of a cup of tea	**divu galonu piena**	of 2 gallons of milk
DAT:	**tasei tējas**	for a cup of tea	**diviem galoniem piena**	for 2 gals. of m.
ACC:	**tasi tējas**	a cup of tea (obj.)	**divus galonus piena**	2 gallons of milk
LOC:	**tasē tējas**	in a cup of tea	**divos galonos piena**	in 2 gals.of milk

Note the difference between the genitives here and in .22 above: Here the nouns in genitive are modifiers; in .22 they are being modified.

b. THE NUMBER NOUNS **simts** AND **tūkstotis** can be thought of **as amounts** and used in the manner shown above: (**vesels**) **simts māju** a (whole) hundred of houses, (**kāds**) **tūkstotis koku** (some) thousand of trees; **simtam māju** for a hundred of houses, **tūkstotim koku** for a thousand of trees, etc.
Also, they can be handled **as numbers** shown in .22, a. & b. above, esp. when the indeclinable forms are used: **simts/simt māju** 100 houses, **tūkstotis/tūkstoš koku** 1000 trees; **visas simts/simt mājas** all 100 houses, **tie tūkstoš koki** those 1000 trees; **simts/simt mājām** for 100 houses, etc.

c. The indeclinable numbers themselves as well as the quantity adverbs iscussed in 5.1.31 (**daudz meiteņu** many girls, **vairāk tējas** more tea, etc.) MAY BE TAKEN AS A KIND OF QUANTITY UNITS to explain why they must have genitives to go with them.

5.2.4 **ADDITIONAL GENITIVE USES** taken up in this lesson include **descriptive geographic names** and the full set of **prepositions that take the genitive** singular.

5.2.41 **DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVES OF GEOGRAPHIC NAMES make proper noun** (in genitive) **+ common noun** (in any decl. case) **phrases** that designate countries, cities, water bodies and (less often) mountains. Note the various English phrase structures that stand for the uniform Latvian structure (see also 5.1.22):

Latvijas valsts	the state/country of Latvia
Mičiganas štats	the state of Michigan
Ņujorkas štats	the state of New York
Ņujorkas pilsēta	the city of New York / New York City
Rīgas pilsēta	the city of Riga (Latvian capital)
Daugavas upe	the river Daugava (in Latvia)
Hudzonas upe	the Hudson River
Mičigana ezers	Lake Michigan
Atlantijas okeāns	the Atlantic Ocean
Baltijas jūra	the Baltic Sea

Of course, most of such place names can drop the common noun: **Latvija, Mičigana, Ņujorka**, etc. The names of the seas and oceans must remain phrases.

a. In making foreign placenames declinable in Latvian, THEIR GENDER IS DETERMINATED BY THE GENERIC LATVIAN NAME OF THE GEOGRAPHIC FEATURE:
LANDS - **zemes** - are feminine: **Amerika, Eiropa, Mičigana**
CITIES - **pilsētas** - are feminine: **Ņujorka, Portlenda, Londona**
RIVERS - **upes** - are feminine: **Hudzona, Delavēra** (Delaware)
LAKES - **ezeri** - are masculine: **Mičigans, Hurons,**
MOUNTAINS - **kalni** - are masculine: **Everests, Alpi** (the Alps)

b. INDECLINABLE GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES, such as **Ohaio** (Ohio), **Misisipi** (Mississippi), etc., are mostly used in phrases for greater semantic and grammatical clarity: **Ohaio štatam, Misisipi upi, Toronto pilsētā.**

c. Following the Russians (who phoneticize the Western names in the letters of their own alphabet) THE LATVIANS HAVE ADOPTED THE CLUMSY METHOD OF PHONETICIZING ALL FOREIGN NAMES even from those languages that use the same Latin alphabet. This method tries to write the foreign words in Latvian as they sound, not as they are written. Of course, there are many inexactitudes and exceptions sanctioned by history and tradition. When you go beyond the range of the foreign names Supplement, consult a larger dictionary.
When a not too well known name (to the Latvians) appears in a piece of writing for the first time, its original spelling is given in parentheses after the Latvian spelling: **Delavēra** (Delaware).

5.2.42 THE GENITIVE SINGULAR (DATIVE PLURAL) **PREPOSITION SET** CONTAINS:

zem, aiz, bez, uz, pie, pēc, pirms, -pus, no, dēļ, kopš, virs

With the exception of **no** 'from', this set contains STATIC PREPOSITIONS THAT INDICATE LOCATIONS (rather than movements) in place and time. Also, the meaning of each preposition in this set shows less diversity. See some illustrations of their use in the Additional Reading Exercises, **Sect. D.** In the plural these prepositions, too, go with the dative forms.

a. THE PREPOSITION **pie** + A PERSON'S NAME indicate this person's residence:
pie manis at my place **pie jums** at your place
Es biju pie draudzenes. I was at my girlfriend's (place):
Viņa nedzīvo pie veçākiem. She isn't living with her parents (at her parents' residence).

b. THE PREPOSITION **kopš** 'SINCE' should be used in time phrases only: **kopš vakardienas** 'since yesterday'. It should never be used as a clause introducer meaning 'because'.

c. THE SUBSET WITH **-pus** '-SIDE' has also these members not used in our texts:
augšpus above, up (the hill/river) **lejpus** below, down (the hill/river)
ārpus outside of **viņpus** on that/other side

d. THE PREPOSITION **uz** FUNCTIONS IN BOTH SETS, but with different meanings:
Es eju uz akmeni. I'm going to the rock. (acc. sg.) **Es sēžu uz akmens.** I'm sitting on the rock. (gen. sg.)
In the plural, of course, only the contexts tell the differences in meaning:
Es eju uz akmeņiem. (dat. pl.) **Es sēžu uz akmeņiem.** (dat. pl.)

5.2.5 ADDITIONAL PHRASE STRUCTURES.

5.2.51 **EXPRESSIONS OF DOING (FARING) WELL/BADLY.** We already know them since the Lesson 1.2; now we can go into their grammatical composition.

THE QUESTION: **Kā tev iet/klājas?** 'How are you (doing)?' HAS THE DATIVE SUBJECT AND AN IDIOMATIC USE OF BOTH VERBS. (Literally the question means: "How does (it) go/fold for you?")

THE ANSWER: **Man iet/klājas labi (slikti).** 'I am (doing) well (badly).' HAS (in addition to the dative subject and the idiomatic verb) THE ADVERBIAL COMPLEMENT **labi/slikti.**

5.2.52 **EXPRESSIONS OF BEING/FEELING WELL, ILL; HOT, WARM, CHILLY OR COLD** all use adverbial complements. Concerning the subject and verb, two versions are possible:

a. DATIVE SUBJECT + **ir** (**bija, būs**) + ADVERBIAL COMPLEMENT:
Man ir labi. I feel well. (Lit: "It is well for me.")
Vai tev ir slikti? Do you feel ill.
Viņai ir karsti. She feels hot.
Viņam būs vēsi bez mēteļa. He'll feel chilly without a coat.
Ārā mums bija auksti. Outdoors we felt cold.
Drīz jums atkal būs silti. Soon you'll feel warm again.
THE GENERAL QUESTION: **Kā tev (viņai utt.) ir?** How do you (does she, etc.) feel?

b. NOMINATIVE SUBJECT + PERSONAL FORMS OF **justies** + ADVERBIAL COMPLEMENT:
Es jūtos labi. I feel well. **Ārā mēs jutāmies auksti.** Outdoors we felt chilly.
Vai tu jūties slikti? Do you feel ill? **Drīz jūs jutīsities silti.** Soon you'll // feel warm.
Viņa jūtas karsti. She feels hot.
Viņš jutīsies vēsi bez mēteļa. He'll feel chilly with no coat.
THE GENERAL QUESTION: **Kā tu jūties (viņa jūtas)?** How do you (does she) feel?

c. OTHER EXPRESSIONS WITH **būt** AND **justies** MUST USE AN ADJECTIVE COMPLEMENT:
Es esmu/jūtos laimīgs (laimīga). I am/feel happy.
Kāpēc viņas nebija/nejutās priecīgas? Why were they not / did they not feel merry?

5.2.53 **THE VERB pietikt 'HAVE ENOUGH'** makes up the core of another dative subject, genitive object structure:
Mums visa pietiek. We have enough of everything.
Viņai nepietika tējas. She did not have enough tea.
Vai tev pietiks atvilktņu veļai? Will you have enough drawers for your linen?
Man pietiek! I've (had) enough!

a. Without the (dative) subject **pietikt** MEANS 'BE ENOUGH':
Nepietiek laika visu padarīt. (There) is not enough time to do everything.
Šodienai pietiks. It will be enough / That will do for today.
Pietiek! Enough!

5.2.54 **ADDITIONAL CLOCK TIME PHRASES** to indicate some minutes to or past the hour or half hour. Four particles are used: **bez** 'less, to' or **pirms** 'before'; **pāri** 'past' or **pēc** 'after'; the word **ceturksnis**, **-nim** means 'quarter (hour)'.

12:00	pulkstenis	ir	tieši divpadsmit
12:01	"	"	viena minūte pāri/pēc divpadsmitiem
12:03	"	"	trīs minūtes " " "
12:15	"	"	ceturksnis " " "
12:26	"	"	bez četrām minūtēm pusviens / četras minūtes pirms pusvieniem
12:30	"	"	tieši pusviens
12:32	"	"	divas minūtes pāri/pēc pusvieniem
12:45	"	"	bez ceturkšņa viens / ceturksnis pirms vieniem
12:49	"	"	bez vienpadsmit minūtēm viens / vienpadsmit minūtes pirms vieniem
12:59	"	"	bez vienas minūtes viens / viena minūte pirms vieniem
1:00	pulkstenis	ir	tieši viens

The phrases with **bez** are used more frequently than the phrases with **pirms**.

5.2.6 **MISCELLANEOUS NOTES:**

5.2.61 **THE PARTICLE pāri** 'over, past', although similar to the preposition **pār**, is an adverb, because it can stand alone without a noun/pronoun: **lēkt pāri** 'to jump across'. In its prepositional function, it takes the dative case also in the singular: **lēkt upei pāri / pāri upei** 'to jump across the stream'.

5.2.62 **SOME ADVERBS ARE FORMED** (FROM ADJECTIVES) **WITH -u**. We have **tālu** 'far away' and **tuvu** 'near-by', formed from the adjectives **tāls,-la** and **tuvs,-va**.

5.2.63 **ITERATIVE VERBS** indicate a repeated action. In Latvian they are marked marked (often) by a base-vowel alteration and a change of conjugation:

GENERAL ACTION:		ITERATIVE ACTION:	
vest	cary/drive (in a vehicle)	**vadāt**	carry about / here & there
braukt	ride (in a vehicle)	**braukāt**	ride about / here & there
(**steigt**	hurry (orig. 'go fast')	**staigāt**	walk about / here & there
skriet	run	**skraidīt**	keep running about

5.2.64 **TWO SPECIAL NUMERALS:** THE IDIOMATIC NUMERAL **pusotra/pusotras** '1½' is a genitive & takes a genitive: **pusotra kukuļa** '1½ loaf', **pusotras mārciņas** '1½ pound'. THE NUMERAL **arpus** 'and a half' replaces the endings of small numbers: **divarpus** '2½', **trīsarpus** '3½', etc. With longer numbers it becomes a separate word or even a phrase: **septiņi arpus / septiņi ar pusi** '7½'.

5.2 READING

KO DARĪSIM VASARAS BRĪVLAIKĀ?

1. Pavasara semestra beigas jau bija tuvu. Skolnieki un skolnieces gatavojās uz gada beigu pārbaudījumiem savos mācību priekšmetos. Viņi jutās un arī izskatījās ļoti nemierīgi un nevarēja vairs nosēdēt klasē pie grāmatām. Domās viņi jau kavējās visur kur citur. Droši vien katrs iedomājās, kā viņš pavadīs vasaras brīvlaiku.

pavasara semestra beigas: Note how the 1st noun the 2nd, and the 2nd modifies the 3rd.

nosēdēt: no- reinforces nevarēja

visur kur citur 'everywhere else'

2. Arī skolotāja juta, ka mācīšana vairs tik labi neveicas. Kādu pēcpusdienu, kad bērni bija sevišķi neuzmanīgi, viņa - tīšām vai netīšām - iesāka runāt un jautāt par vasaru. Nu atkal katram bija viss kas, ko teikt un stāstīt. Skolotāja uzzināja, ka gandrīz neviens nepaliks mājās visu vasaru, bet kaut kur brauks un ceļos.

iesāka 'suddenly began'

3. Ingrīda teica: Arī šovasar mūsu ģimene pavadīs kādas četras nedēļas jūrmalā. Mēs brauksim automobilī caur visu Jaunangliju uz Menas štatu. Mēs dzīvosim netālu no Bangoras pilsētas gandrīz pie paša Atlantijas okeāna. Katru dienu es pastaigāšos gar krastu, sēdēšu uz kāda akmens, vai gulēšu smiltīs un sauļošos. Kad man kļūs karsti, es lēkšu ūdenī un peldēšos. Es māku labi peldēt. Es esmu laba peldētāja.

uz Menas štatu 'to the state of Maine'

no Bangoras pilsētas 'from the city of Bangor'

4. Citreiz mēs brauksim jūrā ar laivu. Mēs braukāsim no saliņas uz saliņu un pa ceļam zvejosim. Ja arī neveicas noķert nevienu zivi, tomēr

pa ceļam 'on the way' (idiomatic expr.)

zvejošana man patīk. Tur braukā arī kuģītis, kas pavadā tūristus un viņiem parāda skaistas vietas pie krasta un salām. Apkārtne tur tiešām ir skaista. Nekad nav ļoti karsti. Dažreiz no rīta ir diezgan pavēsi pat vasaras vidū.

pavadā 'takes here and there'

no rīta 'in (the early part of) the morning'

pavēsi 'somewhat chilly'

5. Arī mēs šo vasaru pavadīsim brīvā dabā un svaigā gaisā, stāstīja Jānis ar Annu. Mēs dzīvosim uz laukiem pie krustmātes, mūsu mātes māsas. Viņai ir ferma; tā atrodas apmēram simt divdesmit jūdžu no šejienes. Mēs brauksim uz turieni ar autobusu vieni paši, un krustmāte vai krusttēvs mūs sagaidīs otrā galā ar automobili.

brīvā dabā 'in the open'

uz laukiem pie krustmātes 'in the country at our aunt's'

6. Fermā ir visādi mājas dzīvnieki un putni: divpadsmit piena govju, kādas desmit cūkas, divdesmit vai divdesmit viens tītars un vesels bars vistu. Krustmāte pati nekad nezina, vai viņai ir tieši simts vistu, simt viena vista, vai varbūt tikai deviņdesmit deviņas vistas. Tās visu laiku skraida visur kur, un tāpēc grūti saskaitīt. Fermā ir arī daudz ogu un augļu krūmu. Rudeņos viņiem ir visādi augļi, ko ēst visu ziemu. Jā, un viņiem ir arī pāris zirgu. Mēs varēsim jāt pa apkārtnes ceļiem un takām. Lielu ceļu un ielu tur nemaz nav. Tā nobeidza Jānis un Anna savu stāstu.

mājas dzīvnieki/putni:

piena govs 'milch cow'

grūti saskaitīt 'difficult to count/add up'

ko ēst visu ziemu 'to eat all winter (long)'

7. Pēc Jāņa un Annas sāka runāt Aivars un Ivars: Mēs plānojam ceļot, bet ne no pilsētas uz pilsētu. Mēs meklēsim vietas, kas ir tuvu pie dabas, bet tālu no pilsētas. Mēs staigāsim pa mežiem.

pa 'all through'

Mēs kāpsim kalnos. Mēs skatīsimies visādus meža dzīvniekus un putnus. Mēs zvejosim pie katras upes un ezera, kuru ūdens vēl ir skaidrs un tīrs. No rīta līdz vakaram mēs būsim pa āru, arī gatavosim sev ēst un pat gulēsim kaut kur ārā zem klajām debesīm.

pa āru 'outdoors'

zem klajām debesīm 'under open skies'

8. Ko jūs darīsit, ja līs? kāds viņiem prasīja. Nu, Aivars teica, mums būs arī telts līdz, un lietus laikā mēs būsim zem jumta. Ja jūs tur mežā nekas neapēdīs, Juris sacīja abiem brāļiem, jums tiešām klāsies tik labi, ka jūs nemaz negribēsit vairs braukt atpakaļ uz mājām.

līs 'it will rain'

zem jumta 'under a shelter'

9. Tad stāstīja Alberts: Vasaras beigās es ar vecākiem lidošu uz Eiropu. Vispirms es braukšu uz Latviju un palikšu Rīgā pāris nedēļu. Tur es satikšu savus Latvijas brālēnus un māsīcas. Es stāstīšu viņiem par Ameriku, un viņi man pastāstīs un parādīs, kā viņiem iet un ko viņi dara.

kā viņiem iet un ko viņi dara 'how they are and what they are doing'

10. Pēc Latvijas brauciena mēs vēl paceļosim ar vilcienu pa citām Eiropas zemēm un valstīm, brauksim ar kuģi uz Angliju un no Londonas ar lidmašīnu uz Ņujorku. Pirms skolas sākuma mēs jau būsim mājās.

vēl pa- 'some more'

11. Kad visi viens pēc otra pastāstīja savus vasaras plānus, skolotāja teica: Nu tagad es zinu, uz kurieni jūs katrs brauksit, kur būsit un ko darīsit. Bet pašlaik vēl nav vasara, tāpēc iesim atpakaļ pie mācībām! Vēl palasīsim, parakstīsim un pamācīsimies! Bet bērni sacīja: Labāk iesim mājās, jo pulkstenis jau rāda deviņas minūtes pāri pus trijiem.

iesim 'let's go'

vēl palasīsim, etc. 'let's read etc. some more'

R-5.2 VOCABULARY

MASCULINE NOUNS:

akmens, -nim stone, rock
auglis, -lim fruit
autobuss,-am bus
automobilis,-im automobile
brīvlaiks, -kam vacation
ceļš, ceļam road, way
dzīvnieks, -kam animal
  mājas dzīvnieks domestic animal
  meža dzīvnieks wild animal
ezers, -ram lake
gaiss, gaisam air
galons, -nam gallon
grāds, grādam degree
kalns, kalnam mountain; hill
krusttēvs,-am godfather; uncle
krasts, -tam shore, coast; bank
krūms, krūmam bush
kuģis, kuģim ship
kukulis, -lim loaf (bread)
lauks, laukam field
[pl. lauki fields; country(side)
okeāns, -nam ocean
pavasaris,-im spring (season)
plāns, plānam plan
priekšmets,-tam object, thing; article
  mācību priekšmets study subject
putns, putnam bird, fowl
rudens, -nim autumn, fall
sākums, -umam beginning, start
semestris,-im semester
simts, simtam hundred
[indecl. simt "
štats, štatam federated state (as in US)
tītars, -ram turkey
tūkstotis,-im thousand
[indecl. tūkstoš "
tūrists, -tam tourist
vilciens,-nam train
zirgs, zirgam horse

FEMININE NOUNS:

apkārtne,-nei surroundings; vicinity
beigas, -gām end, conclusion
burka, burkai jar
daba, dabai nature
darīšana,-nai business, concern
debess, -sij sky; cloud (obs.)
[pl. debesis sky; heaven
ferma, fermai farm
govs, govij cow
jūdze, jūdzei mile
  kvadrātjūdze square mile
jūra, jūrai sea
jūrmala, -lai seaside, beach
kārba, kārbai tin can
krustmāte,-ei godmother; aunt
laiva, laivai boat
lidmašīna,-ai airplane
mārciņa, -ņai pound
minūte, -tei minute
nulle, nullei zero
oga, ogai berry
paka, pakai package, bundle
[dim. paciņa parcel, packet, pack
pilsēta, -tai city, town
sala, salai island
smilts, -tij sand (not much used)
[pl. smiltis sand, sands
taka, takai path
telts, teltij tent
temperātūra,-ai temperature
upe, upei river
vieta, vietai place, spot
valsts, -tij independent state/country
vista, vistai hen; chicken
zeme, zemei land, country; soil
ziema, ziemai winter
zivs, zivij fish

PROPER NAMES:

Amerika, -kai America
Anglija, -jai England
Jaunanglija,-ai New England
Mena, Menai Maine
Bangora, -rai Bangor
Portlenda, -dai Portland
Eiropa, Eiropai Europe
Latvija, -jai Latvia
Celsijs, -jam Celsius (inventor of centigrade // thermometer)
Fārenhaits, -tam Fahrenheit
Atlantijas okeāns Atlantic Ocean
Mičigans, -nam Lake Michigan
Mičigana, -nai State of Michigan
Nujorka, -kai New York
Oregona, -nai Oregon
Londona, -nai London
Rīga, Rīgai Riga (Latv. capital)

ADJECTIVES:

brīvs, brīva free
tuvs, tuva near
[adv. tuvu near-by
tāls, tāla far, remote
[adv. tālu far away
klajš, klaja open, not covered over
lēts, lēta cheap
svaigs, -ga fresh
grūts, grūta difficult, hard
[adv. grūti hard, painfully

V E R B S:

pietikt: pietiek, pietīka, pietiks	I-k/c	tr/itr: be/have enough, suffice
satikt: satīek, satīka, satīks	I "	tr/itr: meet, encounter; get along with
plesties: plešas, pletās, pletīsies	I-š/t	itr: spread/extend itself; izplesties
just: jūt, juta, jutīs	I-i	tr: feel, sense // expand, widen
justies: jūtas, jutās, jutīsies	"	itr: feel
jāt: jāj, jāja, jās	I-reg.	itr: ride on (horse)back
klāties: klājas, klājās, klāsies	I-reg.	lk: be doing/feeling, fare
ķert: ķer, ķēra, ķers	I-reg.	tr: catch; noķert catch, seize
lēkt: ļec, lēca, lēks	I-reg.	itr: leap, jump
svērt: sver, svēra, svērs	I-reg.	tr: weigh
svērties: sveras, svērās, svērsies	"	itr: weigh oneself; incline toward
braukāt: braukā, braukāja, braukās	II-ā	itr: drive/ride about (around)
iedomāties: iedomājas, -mājās, -māsies	II-ā	tr: imagine
staigāt: staigā, staigāja, staigās	II-ā	itr: walk, stroll
pastaigāties: pastaigājas, -gājās, -gāsies		itr: take a walk/stroll
vadāt: vadā, vadāja, vadās	II-ā	tr: lead/drive about; pavadāt carry/
ceļot: ceļo, ceļoja, ceļos	II-o	itr: travel // take here & there
gatavot: gatavo, gatavoja, gatavos	II-o	tr: prepare
gatavoties: gatavojas, -vojās, -vosies	"	itr: get ready, prepare oneself
lidot: lido, lidoja, lidos	II-o	itr: fly
plānot: plāno, plānoja, plānos	II-o	tr: plan
sauļoties: sauļojas, -ļojās, -ļosies	II-o	itr: sun (oneself), bask in the sun
zvejot: zvejo, zvejoja, zvejos	II-o	tr/itr: fish
mācēt: māk, mācēja, mācēs	III-ē	tr: know how, can
peldēt: pęld, peldēja, peldēs	III-ē	itr: swim, be afloat
peldēties: pęldas, peldējās, peldēsies	"	itr: swim, bathe
skaitīt: skaita, skaitīja, skaitīs	III-ī	tr: count; saskaitīt count/add up
skraidīt: skraida, skraidīja, skraidīs	III-ī	itr: run about

Earlier Verbs with New Prefixes:

iznākt	come out, result	nosēdēt	sit a while; be able to sit
		sagaidīt	await, meet; expect
nobeigt	finish, complete	uzzināt	find out

A D V E R B S:

visur	everywhere	tīšām	on purpose, intentionally
visur kur	anywhere at all	netīšām	accidentally, unintentionally
citur	elsewhere	apmēram	about, approximately
kaut kur	somewhere	šovasar	this summer
nost	away (from), off, apart	pāri	(w. dat.) over, across; past (the hour)

Indeclinable Numerals:

-arpus	and a half	pusotra	one and a half

e.g. divarpus two and a half

ADDITIONAL FEM. i-STEM and SPECIAL MASC. i-STEM NOUNS

NOM. SG.	GEN. SG.	DAT. SG.	GEN. PL.	DIMINUTIVE	
smilts	smilts	smiltij	smilšu	smiltiņa	sand
telts	telts	teltij	telšu	teltiņa	tent
valsts	valsts	valstij	valstu	valstiņa	state
govs	govs	govij	govju	gotiņa	cow
zivs	zivs	zivij	zivju	zivtiņa	fish
			ALL PL.		
akmens	akmens	akmenim	akmeņi, etc.	akmentiņš	stone
rudens	rudens	rudenim	rudeņi, "	(rudentiņš)	autumn

5.2 ADDITIONAL READING EXERCISES

A. GENITIVES WITH AMOUNTS & MEASURES:

see .3

12. Es izdzeršu **tasi** tēj**as** un tad iešu uz pārtikas veikalu un šo un to nopirkšu. Man ir vajadzīgas kādas divas **kārbas** zivj**u**, **burka** kafij**as**, **galons** piena, **kukulis** maiz**es** un divas vai divarpus **mārciņas** vistas gaj**as**. Kad tu pirksi visu ko sev, lūdzu nopērc man **paciņu** tēj**as**. Es tev iedošu pusotra dolāra. Domāju, ka tev ar to pietiks un tēja vairāk nemaksās.

divarpus: .64

pusotra: .64

B. NUMBER - NOUN AGREEMENT:

13. **Cik** meiteņu un zēnu tu redzēji? Es saskaitīju **astoņpadsmit** zēn**u** un divdesmit **vien**u meiten**i**. Kur bija **astoņpadsmit** zēn**u** un divdesmit **vien**a meiten**e**? **Visi** astoņpadsmit zēn**i** un **desmit** meiteņ**u** bija šajā klasē. Astoņpadsmit **zēniem** un desmit **meitenēm** bija grāmatas rokās. Otrā klasē sēdēja **kādas** desmit vai vienpadsmit meiten**es**. Desmit vai **vienpadsmit** meiteņ**u** sēdēja un kaut ko rakstīja.

18 zēn**u**: .22

21-**u** meiten**i**: .21a.

visi 18 zēn**i**: .22a.

18 zēn**iem**: .22b.

14. Abpus šīs ielas ir ap **simts** māj**u**. Simts **mājām** ir dārzi. Simts **mājās** dzīvo ģimenes. Vai tu redzi **šīs** simts māj**as**? Tik **daudz** māj**u** es neredzu. Es redzu tikai četrdesmit **četras** māj**as**. Cik **mājām** ir pelēki jumti? Četrdesmit **mājām** ir pelēki jumti. Četrām **mājām** ir sarkani jumti. **Četrdesmit** māj**u** ir ar pelēkiem jumtiem. **Četras** māj**as** ir ar sarkaniem jumtiem. **Tās** četrdesmit māj**as** ir ar pelēkiem jumtiem. Te nav nevienas mājas ar zilu jumtu. Te nav māju ar ziliem jumtiem.

simts māj**u**, etc.: .3a.

C. VARIOUS NUMBERS & AMOUNTS PHRASES:

15. **Cik maksā** ŠĪ gaļa? Tā maksā **divi dolāri un trīsdesmit trīs centi mārciņā. Cik** tagad **maksā** piens? Tas ir **tuvu pie divi dolāri galonā.** Cik tu maksāji par kurpēm? Par tām es izdevu **četrdesmit vienu dolāru ar centiem.** Neko vairs nevar nopirkt lēti. ŠĪ cepure izskatās lēta. Tā man **nemaksāja ne centa.** Es pirku daudzas citas mantas, un pārdevējs man iedeva šo cepuri **par brīvu.**

mārciņā 'a pound'
tuvu pie 'near to / nearly'
galonā 'a gallon'
par brīvu 'for free'

16. **Cik tālu** ir no Bostonas līdz Vašingtonai? Pa zemes ceļiem iznāk **ap četri simti četrdesmit jūdžu.** Un **cik tālu** ir no Portlendas Menā līdz Portlendai Oregonā? Šīs abas pilsētas ir **trīs tūkstoši četri simti septiņas jūdzes tālu** viena no otras. **Cik gara** ir Ohaio upe? Ohaio ir **tūkstoš trīs simti sešas jūdzes gara. Cik liela** ir Mičigana? Mičiganas štats ir **piecdesmit astoņi tūkstoši divi simti kvadrātjūdžu liels.** Un **cik liels** ir Mičigana ezers? Mičigans ir **divdesmit divi tūkstoši trīs simti kvadrātjūdžu liels.**

iznāk '(it) comes out (to)'
Mičigana = land (zeme)
Mičigans = lake (ezers)

17. **Cik vecs** ir tavs brālis? Mans brālis ir **divdesmit trīs gadus vecs.** Manam brālim ir **divdesmit divi gadi.** Un **cik gadu** ir tev pašai? To es tev neteikšu, jo tā nav tava darīšana. Vai tu arī neteiksi, **cik tu sver?** Es svēros vakar un svēru tieši **simts divdesmit piecas mārciņas. Cik ilgi** tu vēl būsi šajā istabā? Es te būšu **kādu stundu un divdesmit minūtes.** Es te sēdēšu un rakstīšu **līdz kādiem pulksten pus pieciem.**

NOTE THE POSSESSIVE STRUCTURES
darīšana 'business'
kādiem: translate 'about'

18. **Cik grādu** pašlaik ir temperātūra? Istabā ir **divdesmit viens grāds virs nulles,** bet ārā **pieci grādi zem nulles.** Tie ir Celsija grādi. Fārehaita grādos temperātūra ir **septiņdesmit grādu** istabā un **divdesmit trīs grādi** ārā.

Celsija grādi 'Celsius / centigrade degrees'

D. PREPOSITIONS WITH GENITIVE SINGULAR:

19. Bērziņu māja atrodas **pie ielas**, kas nekur tālāk neved. Tāpēc pa šo ielu brauc maz automobiļu, un bērni bieži spēlējas **uz ielas**. Pati māja nav tieši **pie ielas**, bet tālāk nost. **No mājas** uz ielu ved celiņš. **Šaipus mājas pie celiņa** ir vairāki krūmi. **Otrpus mājas** aug daži koki. Viens koks aug **pie pašas mājas** un izplešas **virs mājas**. Gandrīz visa māja ir **zem šī koka**. **Aiz mājas** aug vēl kādi krūmi, bet **no ielas** tos nevar redzēt.

tālāk nost 'farther off/removed'

vēl kādi 'some more'

20. Bērziņi te dzīvo **kopš** šī gada **sākuma**. Viņi daudz dara **dēļ savas mājas** un **sava dārza**. Viņi nekad nesēd **bez darba**. Sevišķi nedēļas nogalēs **no agra rīta** līdz vēlam vakaram viņi strādā **pie mājas** vai **dārza**. **Pirms** Bērziņu **atnākšanas** uz šejieni, šis dārzs un šī māja neizskatījās tik labi. Tagad, **pēc nepilna pusgada**, šo vietu gandrīz vairs nevar pazīt.

šī gada is a DESCRIPTIVE GEN., not dependent on the preposition

atnākšana 'arrival'

nevar pazīt 'one cannot recognize'

P R E P O S I T I O N S with Genitive Singular (and Dative Plural);

aiz	behind, beyond	**pirms**	before
bez	without, -less; besides	**uz**	on, upon
dēļ	for (the sake of), because of	**virs**	over, above; on (top of)
kopš	since	**zem**	under, below
no	from, away from, down from, off, // out of	**-pus**:	
pēc	after	**abpus**	on both sides of
pie	near, at, beside, by	**otrpus**	on the other side of
		šaipus	on this side of
		etc.	

IN A JINGLE: **zem, aiz, bez, uz;**
pie, pēc, pirms, -pus;
no, dēļ, kopš, virs.

citreiz adv. some other time 3.2
cits, cita pr. other, another 2.3
citur adv. elsewhere 5.2
cūka,-kai Fa pig 5.2

Č **četri,-ras** num. four 2.2 & 5.2
četrpadsmit 14; **četrdesmit** 40

D **daba,-bai** Fa nature 5.2
dabūt: dabū, dabūja, dabūs II-ū
tr: obtain, get 4.2
dakšiņa,-ņai Fa table fork 4.1
daļa,-ļai Fa part, portion 5.1
darbs,-bam Ma work, labor, toil 4.2
dārgs,-ga adj. dear, expensive 5.1
darīšana,-nai Fa business, concern 5.2
darīt: dara, darīja, darīs III-ī tr: do
dārzs,-zam Ma garden, yard 3.1 //2.1
daudz adv. much, many 5.1
daudzi,-dzas num/pr. many 3.1
daži, dažas num/pr. some 3.1
dažreiz adv. sometimes 3.2
debess,-sij Fi sky, heaven 5.2
mostly pl. **debesis**
dęguns,-nam Ma nose 2.3
dēļ +gen.sg. for, because of 5.1 & 5.2
derēt: der, derēja, derēs III-ē
itr/tr: fit, be suitable/useful 5.1
dęsa,-sai Fa sausage 4.2
desmit num. ten 2.2
deviņi,-ņas num. nine 2.2 & 5.2
deviņpadsmit 19; **deviņdesmit** 90
diena,-nai Fa day 3.3
diezgan adv. enough; rather 3.2
diktāts,-tam Ma dictation 4.2
diktēt: diktē, diktēja, diktēs II-ē
itr/tr: dictate 4.2
dīvāns,-nam Ma davenport, sofa 3.1
divarpus num. two and a half 5.2
divi, divas num. two 2.2 & 5.2
divpadsmit '12' 3.3; **divdesmit** '20'
dolārs,-ram Ma dollar 5.1
domāt: domā, domāja, domās II-ā
itr/tr: think; intend inf. 4.2
izdomāt figure out; invent
dot: dod, deva, dos I-reg. give 4.1
iedot give (single act) 4.1
uzdot assign, give up 4.2
draudzene,-nei Fe girlfriend 2.2
draugs,-gam Ma (boy)friend 2.2
drēbe,-bei Fe cloth; pl. clothes 3.2
drīz adv. soon 5.1
drusku adv. a little, a bit 5.1
durvis,-vīm Fi door 3.1
dvielis,-lim Mi towel 5.1

Dz **dzęltęns,-na** adj. yellow 3.2
dzēriens,-nam Ma drink 5.1
dzert: dzer, dzēra, dzers I-reg. 4.1
tr/itr: drink; **izdzert** drink out 4.2
dziedāšana,-nai Fa singing 4.2
dziedāt: dzied, dziedāja, dziedās III-ā
tr/itr: sing 4.2
dziesma,-mai Fa song 4.2
dzirdēt: dzird, dzirdēja, dzirdēs III-ē
tr/itr: hear 4.1
dzīvnieks,-kam Ma animal 5.2
mājas dzīvnieks domestic animal
meža dzīvnieks wild animal
dzīvot: dzīvo, dzīvoja, dzīvos II-o
itr: live, dwell 3.1

E **ēd-** = vb. see **ēst**
ēdamgalds,-dam Ma dining (room) table 3.1
ēdamistaba,-bai Fa dining room 3.1
ēdiens,-nam Ma food 5.1
ej- = vb: see **iet**
es pr. I, **manis** of me, **man** for me,
mani me, **manī** in me 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, 5.1
es- = vb: see **būt**
ēst: ēd, ēda, ēdīs I-reg. eat 4.1
apēst eat up 4.2
ieēst have a bite/snack 5.1
paēst eat one's full 5.1
ēšana,-nai Fa eating 4.2
ęzęrs,-ram Ma lake 5.2

F **ferma,-mai** Fa farm 5.2
firma,-mai Fa firm, company 5.1
fraze,-zei Fe phrase 4.2

G **gabals,-lam** Ma piece 5.1
gads,-dam Ma year 4.2
gaidīt: gaida, gaidīja, gaidīs III-ī
itr/tr: wait; **pagaidīt** wait a bit 5.1
sagaidīt await, expect, meet 5.2
gaiss,-sam Ma air 5.2
gaišs,-ša adj. light in hue 3.3
gāj- = vb: see **iet**
galds,-dam Ma table 3.1
galons,-nam Ma 5.2
gals,-lam Ma end; tip 5.1
galva,-vai Fa head 2.3
gaļa, gaļai Fa meat 4.1
gan - gan conj. now - now 4.2
gandrīz adv. almost, nearly 5.1
gar +ac.sg. alongside, past, by 4.2
garš, gara adj. long; tall (person) 3.1
garšīgs,-ga adj. tasty 4.1
garšot: garšo, garšoja, garšos II-o
tr: taste; itr: be tasty 4.1
pagaršot taste, sample
gatavot: gatavo, gatavoja, gatavos II-o
tr: prepare 5.2
gatavoties: gatavojas,-vojās,-vosies
itr: prepare oneself, get ready 5.2

gatavs,-va adj. ready 4.1
glāze,-zei Fe (drinking) glass 4.1
govs, govij Fi cow 5.2
grāds,-dam Ma degree 5.2
grāmata,-tai Fa book 2.3
gribēt: grib, gribēja, gribēs III-ē
tr: want, wish, desire 4.1
gribēties: gribas,-bējās,-bēsies III-ē
tr: desire, want + gen. obj. 5.1.43
grīda,-dai Fa floor 3.1
griesti,-tiem Ma ceiling 3.1
griêzt: griêž, griêza, griêzīs I-ž/z
tr: cut; nogriêzt cut off 4.1
griēzt: griēž, griēza, griēzīs I-ž/z
tr: turn, rotate 4.1
pagriēzt turn a little
griēzties: griēžas,-zās,-zīsies I-ž/z
itr: turn, rotate 4.1
pagriezties turn oneself (to)
grūts,-ta adj. difficult, hard 5.2
grūti adv. hard, painfully
gulēšana,-nai Fa sleeping 4.2
gulēt: guļ, gulēja, gulēs III-ē
itr: lie, sleep 3.2
gulta,-tai Fa bed 3.2
gulties: guļas, gūlās, gulsies I-ļ/l
itr: lie down 3.3
apgulties lie down (single act)
guļamistaba,-bai Fa bedroom 3.2
G **ģērbt: ģērbj, ģērba, ģērbs** I-bj/b
tr: clothe, put on clothes 4.1
uzģērbt put on clothes (single act)
ģērbties: ģērbjas, ģērbās, ģērbsies
itr: dress oneself, get dressed 3.3
ģimene,-nei Fe family 5.1
I **iedomāties: iedomājas,-mājās,-māsies**
II-ā tr: imagine 5.2
iekšā loc/adv. inside 3.2
iela, ielai Fa street 5.1
sāniela side street
iet: iet (base **ej-**), **gāja, ies** I-irreg.
itr: walk, go; aiziet go away 2.2
ieiet go in, enter 5.1
ilgs, ilga adj. long lasting 3.3
ilgi adv. for a long time
interesants,-ta adj. interesting 4.2
ir 'is/are' (3rd com. pers. present
īss, īsa adj. short 3.1 // of būt)
istaba,-bai Fa room, chamber 3.1
izdarīt: izdara,-darīja,-darīs III-ī
tr: accomplish, carry out 5.1
izlietne,-nei Fe sink 3.1
izpārdošana,-nai Fa sale 5.1
izskatīties: izskatās,-skatījās,-skatīsies III-ī lk: look (like) 3.1
izteiciens,-nam Ma expression, phrase 4.2
iztikt: iztiek,-tika,-tiks I-k/c
tr/itr: manage to do with, get by 5.1
J **ja** intr. if 4.2
ja arī intr. even if 4.2
jā part. yes 2.1
jāt: jāj, jāja, jās I-reg. ride (animal)
jau adv. already 2.2 // 5.2
jauns,-na adj. new; young 3.1
jautājums,-mam Ma question 4.2
jautāt: jautā, jautāja, jautās II-ā ask
jo intr. for, because 3.3 //questions 2.1
jūdze,-dzei Fe mile; **kvadrātjūdze** square
jumts,-tam Ma roof // mile 5.2
jūra, jūrai Fa sea 5.2
jūrmala,-lai Fa seaside, beach 5.2
jūs pr. ye, you-pl. gen: **jūsu**, dat: **jums**,
ac: **jūs**, loc: **jūsos** 2.2, 3.1, 4.1, 5.1
just: jūt, juta, jutīs I-i tr: sense 5.2
justies: jūtas, jutās, jutīsies itr: feel
KA **ka** intr. that (+ clause) // 5.2
kā [kā] pr. whose (see **kas**) 5.1
kā [kâ] intr. how, in what manner 3.3
kabata,-tai Fa pocket 5.1
kad intr. when 3.3
kādēļ intr. why 3.3
kādreiz adv. once; now and then 3.2
kāds, kāda pr. of what kind 3.1; a 5.1.61
kafija,-jai Fa coffee 4.1
kāja, kājai Fa foot and leg 2.3
kakls,-lam Ma neck 2.3
kalns,-nam Ma hill, mountain 5.2
kamēr intr. while 5.1
kāpēc intr. why 3.3
kāpt: kāpj, kāpa, kāps I-pj/p itr: climb
iekāpt get in/on (a vehicle) 4.1
izkāpt get out/off (a vehicle) 5.1
kārba,-bai Fa tin can 5.2
karote,-tei Fe spoon 4.1
karsts,-ta adj. hot 4.1
kārtīgs,-ga adj. orderly, neat 3.3
kas pr. who, what; **kā** whose; **kam** for whom,
for what; **ko** whom, what 2.1 & 5.1
katrs, katra pr. each, every 2.3
katrs savs pr. each one's own 4.2.43
kaut kas pr. something 5.1
kaut kur adv. somewhere 5.2
kavēt: kavē, kavēja, kavēs II-ē
tr: hinder, delay 4.2
KL **klajš,-ja** adj. open (like the sky) 5.2
klase,-sei Fe class, classroom 3.3
klāt adv. near, close; present 5.1
klāties: klājas, klājās, klāsies I-reg.
lk: be doing/feeling, fare 5.2
klausīties: klausās,-sījās,-sīsies III-ī
itr/tr: listen (to) 3.3

kleita,-tai Fa dress 3.2
klusēt: klusē, klusēja, klusēs II-ē
itr: be silent, keep quiet 3.2
kluss,-sa adj. silent, still 3.3
kļūda,-dai Fa mistake, error 4.2
kļūt: kļūst, kļuva, kļūs I-st lk: become
KO **koks, kokam** Ma tree 3.1; wood 5.1 //4.1
kopš +gen.sg. since 5.2.42-b.
KR **krāsa,-sai** Fa color, hue; paint, dye 3.2
krasts,-tam Ma shore, coast; bank 5.2
krekls,-lam Ma shirt 3.3
krēsls,-lam Ma chair 3.1
krīts,-tam Ma chalk 5.1
krūms,-mam Ma bush 5.2
krustmāte,-tei Fe godmother; aunt 5.2
krusttēvs,-vam Ma godfather; uncle 5.2
krūze,-zei Fe pitcher; mug 4.1
KU **kuģis,-ģim** Mi ship 5.2
kukulis,-lim Mi loaf 5.2
kumode,-dei Fe chest of drawers 3.2
kundze,-dzei Fe lady, Mrs. 5.1.22-e.
kungs,-gam Ma lord; Mr. 5.1 "
kur intr. where 2.3
***kuriene:** used only in these phrases:
no kurienes where from, whence 5.1
uz kurieni where to, whither 4.2
kurpe,-pei Fe shoe 3.3
kurš, kura pr. which, which one; who 3.2
Ķ **ķermenis,-nim** Mi (living) body 4.1
ķert: ķer, ķēra, ķers I-reg.
tr: (try to) catch 5.2
noķert catch, seize
LA **labs, laba** adj. good 3.1
labāk adv. better 5.1
labdien! excl. good day! 1.2
labi adv. well, all right 3.3
labot: labo, laboja, labos II-o
tr: repair, correct 4.2
pārlabot set right correct
laboties: labojas,-bojās,-bosies II-o
itr: mend one's ways, reform 4.2.62
labrīt! excl. good morning! 1.2
labvakar! excl. good evening! 1.2
laid- = vb. see **laist**
laiks,-kam Ma time; weather 4.1
laimīgs,-ga adj. lucky; happy 3.3
laist: laiž, laida, laidīs I-ž/d tr: let
laiva,-vai Fa boat 5.2 //4.1
laiž: see **laist**
lasīšana,-nai Fa reading 4.2
lasīt: lasa, lasīja, lasīs III-ī
tr/itr: read 3.2
izlasīt read from start to finish 4.2
lauks,-kam Ma field 5.2
lauki pl. fields; countryside
LE **ļedus, ļedum** Mu ice 3.1 //3.1
ļedusskapis,-pim Mi icebox, refrigerator
leja, lejai Fa valley; **lejā** down(stairs)
uz leju down(ward) 4.2 //3.2
lej-/lēj- vb. see **liet**
lēkt: lēc, lēca, lēks
ļepns,-na adj. proud 3.3
lete, letei Fe counter 5.1
lēts, lēta adj. cheap 5.2
LI **lidmašīna,-nai** Fa airplane 5.2
lidot: lido, lidoja, lidos II-o
itr: fly 5.2 //4.2.11
līdz 1.intr: until; 2.postpos.w.dat: along with; 3.prep. dat: up to, until
liels,-la adj. big, large, great 3.1
lielums,-mam Ma size 5.1
liet: lej, lēja, lies I-reg. tr: pour
ieliet pour in 4.1 //liquid 4.1
lieta,-tai Fa thing, object 3.2
lietot: lieto, lietoja, lietos II-o
tr: use 4.2
lietus,-tum Mu rain 5.1
likt: liek, lika, liks I-k/c 4.1
tr: 1.put, place; 2.tell/order (to do)
ielikt put in
nolikt put down
uzlikt put on
liktīes: liekas, likās, liksies I-k/c
itr: put/lay oneself; lk: seem 4.2
līt: līst, lija, līs I-st itr: pour, rain
logs, logam Ma window 3.1 //5.1
LU **lūdzu** part. please 1.2
lūgt: lūdz, lūdza, lūgs I-reg. tr: ask, beg, pray 4.1
ļoti adv. very 3.1 //
M **mācēt: māk, mācēja, mācēs** III-ē
tr: know how, can 5.2
mācības,-bām Fa instruction 4.2
mācīt: māca, mācīja, mācīs III-ī
tr: teach 4.2
mācīties: mācās, mācījās, mācīsies III-ī
itr/tr: learn, study 3.1
iemācīties learn and remember 4.2
maize,-zei Fe bread 4.1
māja,-jai Fa house; **mājas** pl. houses; home
māk vb. see **mācēt**
maksāt: maksā, maksāja, maksās II-ā
itr: cost; tr: pay 5.1
samaksāt pay in full 5.1
mala, malai Fa side, edge 3.2
man- pr. see **es**
manīt: mana, manīja, manīs III-ī
tr: perceive, notice 5.1
pamanīt espy, notice 5.1
mans, mana pr. my, mine 2.2
manta,-tai Fa owned/possessed thing 4.1

mārciņa,-ņai Fa pound 5.2
māsa, māsai Fa sister 2.2
māsīca,-cai Fa female cousin 5.1
mašīna,-nai Fa machine, engine; car 5.1
  automašīna motor vehicle, car
  kravas mašīna truck, van
māte, mātei Fe mother 2.3
mats, matam Ma one hair; pl. **mati**
maz adv. little, few 5.1 //hair 2.3
mazāk adv. less 5.1
mazgāt: mazgā, mazgāja, mazgās II-ā
  tr: wash 4.1
mazgāties: mazgājas,-gājās,-gāsies
  itr: wash oneself 3.3
mazs, maza adj. small, little 3.1
mēbele,-lei Fe piece of furniture 3.1
  mēbeles pl. furniture
meitene,-nei Fe girl 2.1
meklēt: meklē, meklēja, meklēs II-ē
  tr: look for, seek 4.1
  sameklēt search for and find 4.2
mēlns,-na adj. black 3.2
mēs pr. we; gen: **mūsu**, dat: **mums**, 2.2
  ac: **mūs**, loc: **mūsos** 3.2, 4.1, 5.1
metāls,-lam Ma metal 5.1
mētelis,-lim Mi overcoat 3.3
mežs, mežam Ma forest, woods 4.2
mierīgs,-ga adj. calm, quiet 3.3
minūte,-tei Fe minute 5.2
mosties: mostas, modās, modīsies I-st
  itr: wake 4.2
  pamosties wake up
mugura,-rai Fa back, spine 2.3
mums pr. for us; see **mēs**
mūs pr. us; see **mēs**
mute, mutei Fe mouth 2.3

N
nākt: nāk, nāca, nāks I-k/c come 2.2
  atnākt come here 2.2
  iznākt come out, result 5.2
  pienākt come up to, approach 5.1
nakts, naktij Fi night 3.3
nauda, naudai Fa money 5.1
nav vb. is not / are not 2.1, 2.2
nazis, nazim Mi knife 4.1
ne part. not 2.1
nē part. no 2.1
ne - ne conj. neither - nor 2.1
ne tikai - bet arī conj. not only -
  - but also 5.1
nedēļa,-ļai Fa week 4.2
nekad adv. never 4.2
nekāds,-da pr. not a, no 5.1.61-b.
nekas pr. nothing 3.3
nemaz adv. (not) at all 4.1
nepareizs,-za adj. incorrect, wrong 4.2
nest: neņs, nesa, nesīs I-reg. tr: tote,
  carry in arms 5.1
  aiznest carry away, take to
netīrs,-ra adj. dirty 3.1 //5.2
netīšām adv. accidentally, unintentionally
neviens, neviena pr. no one, none 3.1
no +gen.sg. from, off, out of 5.1 & 5.2
nodaļa,-ļai Fa section, department 5.1
nogale,-lei Fe end part; only in:
  nedēļas nogale weekend 5.1
nost adv. away, off, apart 5.2
noteikts,-ta adj. definite; firm 3.3
  noteikti adv. definitely
notikt: notiek, notika, notiks I-k/c
  itr: happen, occur, take place 4.2
nozīme,-mei Fe meaning 4.2
nu adv. now; part. well 2.1
nulle, nullei Fe zero 5.2
nupat adv. just now 4.2

Ņ
ņemt: ņem, ņēma, ņems I-reg. tr: take
  paņemt take (single act.) 4.1

O
oga, ogai Fa berry 5.2
okeāns,-nam Ma ocean 5.2
ola, olai Fa egg 4.1
oranžs,-ža adj. orange (colored) 3.2
otrdiena,-nai Fa Tuesday 4.2
  otrdien on Tuesday
otrpus +gen.sg. on the other sode of 5.2
otrs, otra pr. other, another 2.2

PA
pa +ac.sg. all over (the), (moving) on,
  (looking/entering) through 4.2.1 & .24
paciņa,-ņai Fa parcel, packet, pack 5.2
paka, pakai Fa package, bundle 5.2
pakaļ adv./postpos.w.dat. after 4.2
paldies! part. thank you! 1.2
palīdze,-dzei Fe fem. helper, aide 5.1
palīdzēt: palīdz, palīdzēja, palīdzēs III-ē
  tr: help, aid (w. dat. obj.) 5.1
palīgs,-gam Ma male helper, aide 5.1
palikt: paliek, palika, paliks I-k/c
  itr: stay, remain 2.2
papīrs,-ram paper 3.2 & 5.1
par +ac.sg. for, about 4.1 & 4.2
pār +ac.sg. across 4.2
parasts,-ta adj. usual, ordinary 3.3
  parasti adv. usually
paragrafs,-fam Ma paragraph 4.2
pārāk adv. too, overly 5.1
pārbaudījums,-mam Ma test, exam 4.2
pārbaudīt: pārbauda, pārbaudīja, pārbaudīs
  III-ī tr: test, examine 4.2
pārdevēja,-jai Fa fem. salesclerk 5.1
pārdevējs,-jam Ma male salesclerk 5.1
pārdot: pārdod,-deva,-dos I-reg. tr; sell
  izpārdot put on sale 5.1

pareizs,-za adj. correct, right 4.2
  pareizi adv. correctly, right
pāri adv. over 5.2.61; past 5.2.54
pāris, pārim Mi pair 5.1
  pāris indecl. num. a few
pārtika,-kai Fa food, provisions 5.1
pastaigāties: pastaigājas, -gājās, 5.2
  -gāsies II-ā itr: take a walk/stroll
paš- decl. base of
  see the Declension Chart
pašlaik adv. at this time, right now
pat adv. even, just 3.3 //3.1
patīkt: patīk, patika, patiks I-k/c
  tr/itr: like, be pleasing 3.3
pats, pati pr.;(decl. base **paš-**)
  -self; the very, the most 4.2
pats savs pr. one's own 4.2
pavasaris,-rim Mi spring season 5.2
pavisam adv. in all, totally 5.1
pazīt: pazīst, pazina, pazīs I-st
  tr: recognize, know 4.1
PE **pēc** +gen.sg. after 5.1 & 5.2
pēcpusdiena,-nai Fa afternoon 3.3
peldēt: pęld, peldēja, peldēs III-ē
  itr: swim, be afloat 5.2
peldēties: pęldas, peldējās, peldēsies
  itr: swim, bathe 5.2
pęlęks,-ka adj. gray 3.2
PI **pie** +gen.sg. near, at, beside, by 5.1
  at one's place 5.2.42-a
pieci, piecas num. five 2.2
  piecpadsmit 15; **piecdesmit** 50
piektdiena,-nai Fa Friday 4.2 & 5.2
  piektdien on Friday
piens, pienam Ma milk 4.1
piere, pierei Fe forehead 2.3
pieskaņots,-ta adj. matching 5.1
piestāvēt: piestāv,-stāvēja,-stāvēs
  III-ē itr: suit, become, fit 3.3.62
pietikt: pietiek, pietika, pietiks I-k/c
  tr/itr: be enough, suffice 5.2.53
piezīme,-mei Fe note, remark 4.2
pilns, pilna adj. full 4.1
pilsęta,-tai Fa city, town 5.2
pirksts,-tam Ma finger 2.3
pirkt: pęrk, pirka, pirks I-k/c tr: buy,
  izpirkt buy out //purchase 5.1
  nopirkt buy (single act.)
  sapirkt buy a quantity
pirkties: pęrkas, pirkās, pirksies
  itr/tr: shop 5.1
  iepirkties do or go shopping
pirmdiena,-nai Fa Monday
  pirmdien on Monday
pirms +gen.sg. before 5.1 & 5.2
PL **plāns, plāna** adj. thin as a sheet 3.1
plāns, plānam Ma plan 5.2 //5.2
plānot: plāno,-noja,-nos II-o tr: plan 5.2
plastmasa,-sai Fa plastic 5.1 //5.2
plašs, plaša adj. broad, expansive 3.1
plats, plata adj. broad, wide 3.1
plaukts,-tam Ma shelf 3.1
plęcs, plęcam Ma shoulder 2.3
plēst: plēš, plēsa, plēsīs I-š/s
  tr: tear, rip; break 4.1
  saplēst break to pieces
plēstīies: plēšas, plētās, plētīsies I-š/t
  itr: spread, extend itself 5.2
  izplesties expand, widen
plet- vb. see **plesties**
plīts, plītij Fi stove, range 3.1
PR **prasīt: prasa, prasīja, prasīs** III-ī
  tr: ask, demand 4.2
prāts, prātam Ma mind, intellect 4.2
prece, precei Fe article for sale 5.1
pret +ac.sg. against 4.2
priecīgs,-ga adj. joyful, merry 3.3
priekša,-šai Fa front 3.2
  priekšā in front of, before 3.2
  uz priekšu forward, ahead 4.2
priekšmets,-tam Ma object, thing;
  article 5.2
  mācību priekšmets study subject
priekšpusdiena,-nai Fa forenoon 3.3
projām / prom adv. away, off 4.2
prom / projām " " " "
protams adv. of course 4.1
PU **pudele,-lei** Fe bottle 4.2
pulkstenis,-nim Mi clock; watch 3.3
pulksten adv. o'clock 3.3
pusdiena,-nai Fa noon, midday 3.3
  pusdienas pl. midday meal "
puse, pusei Fe half; side, direction 4.1
  pus- prefix: half
  no kuras puses from what direction,
  from which side 5.1
  uz kuru pusi in which direction 4.2
pusotra num.one and a half 5.2.64
pūst: pūš, pūta, pūtīs I-š/t tr/itr: blow
pūt- vb. see **pūst** //4.1
putns,-nam Ma bird, fowl 5.2
R **rad-** vb. see **rast**
radio M-indecl. radio (set) 3.3.74-c.
rādīt: rāda, rādīja, rādīs III-ī
  tr: show, point out 2.3
rakstāmgalds,-dam Ma desk 3.2
rakstīšana,-nai Fa writing (process) 4.2
rakstīt: raksta, rakstīja, rakstīs
  tr/itr: write 3.2
  pierakstīt write down 4.2

raksts,-tam Ma writing, article 4.2
rast: rod, rada, radīs I-reg.
tr: find; mostly w. the prefix:
atrast find 5.1
rasties: rodas, radās, radīsies I-reg.
itr: come into being 5.1
atrasties be located 3.1
ierasties show up, appear, arrive 5.1
raudāt: raud, raudāja, raudās III-ā
itr: weep, cry 4.2.5
redzēt: redz, redzēja, redzēs III-ē
tr/itr: see 4.1
reiz adv. once, at one time 4.2
-reiz suffix: times (as in "2 x 2")
ręsns, ręsna adj. thick as a barrel 3.1
riepa, riepai Fa tire 5.1
rīks, rīkam Ma tool, utensil 3.1
rindkopa,-pai Fa paragraph 4.2
rīt adv. tomorrow 2.1
rīts, rītam Ma morning 3.3
rod- vb. see **rast**
roka, rokai Fa hand and arm 2.3
rudens,-nim Mi autumn, fall 5.2.
rūķis, rūķim Mi dwarf; mostly used as:
rūķītis (little) dwarf 4.2
runāt: runā, runāja, runās II-ā
tr/itr: talk 3.3 //3.3
runāties: runājas,-nājās,-nāsies II-ā
itr; mostly used w. the prefix:
sarunāties talk to one another, chat
SA **sacerējums,-mam** Ma composition 4.2
sacīt: saka, sacīja, sacīs III-ī
tr: say 2.1 & 4.2.94
sākt: sāk, sāka, sāks I-k/c
tr: begin 4.1
sākties: sākas, sākās, sāksies I-k/c
itr: begin, get started 3.3
sākums,-mam Ma beginning, start 5.2
sala, salai Fa island 5.2
sāniela,-lai Fa side street 5.1
sāpēt: sāp, sāpēja, sāpēs III-ē
itr: ache, have an ache, hurt 3.3
saprast: saprot, saprata, sapratīs I-i
tr/itr: understand 4.2
sarkans,-na adj. red 3.2
satikt: satiek, satika, satiks I-k/c 5.2
tr: meet, encounter; get along with
saukt: sauc, sauca, sauks I-reg tr: call
izsaukt call on in class 4.2 //4.1
saukties: saucas, saucās, sauksies I-k/c
itr: be called/named 4.1
atsaukties call back, answer 4.1
iesaukties exclaim 5.1
sauļoties: sauļojas, sauļojās, sauļosies
II-o itr: sun oneself, bask in the sun 5.2
savs, sava pr. one's own 4.1.32
sazināties: sazinās, sazinājās, sazinā-
sies III-ā itr: communicate 4.2.63 &
SE **sēdeklis,-lim** Mi seat 5.1 //5.2.13
sēdēt: sēž/sēd, sēdēja, sēdēs III-ē
itr: sit 3.2.42
nosēdēt be able to sit; sit a while
seja, sejai Fa face 2.3 //5.2
semestris,-rim Mi semester 5.2
septiņi, septiņas num. seven 2.2 & 5.2
septiņpadsmit 17; septiņdesmit 70
sestdiena,-nai Fa Saturday 4.2
sestdien on Saturday
sēsties: sēžas, sēdās, sēdīsies I-ž/d
itr: sit down; mostly w. the prefix:
apsēsties sit down 3.3.52
seši, sešas num. six 2.2 & 5.2
sešpadsmit 16; sešdesmit 60
sev- pr. -self/-selves 4.1.31
gen: sevis, dat: sev, ac: sevi,
loc: sevī (see Declension Chart)
sevišķs,-višķa adj. particular, special
sevišķi adv. especially 3.3
sēž- vb. see **sēdēt** & **sēsties**
SI **siena, sienai** Fa wall 3.1
sieviete,-tei Fe woman 5.1
siers, sieram Ma cheese 4.2
silts, silta adj. warm 4.1
simts, simtam Ma hundred 5.2.3-b.
simt indecl. form: hundred
sirms, sirma adj. gray 4.2
SK **skaidrot: skaidro, skaidroja, skaidros**
II-o tr: make clear 4.2
paskaidrot explain
skaidrs, skaidra adj. clear 4.2 //4.1
skaists, skaista adj. pretty, beautiful
skaitīt: skaita, skaitīja, skaitīs III-ī
tr: count 5.2
saskaitīt count/add up
skaļš, skaļa adj. loud, noisy 3.3
skapis,-pim Mi cupboard, closet 3.1
skatīt: skata, skatīja, skatīs III-ī
tr: look at, observe 4.1
apskatīt examine
skatīties: skatās, skatījās, skatīsies
itr/tr look intently, look at
skola, skolai Fa school 3.1
skolniece,-cei Fe schoolgirl 2.1
skolnieks,-kam Ma schoolboy 2.1
skolotāja,-jai Fa fem. teacher 2.1
skolotājs,-jam Ma male teacher 2.1
skraidīt: skraida, skraidīja, skraidīs
III-ī itr: run about 5.2.63
skriet: skrien, skrēja, skrīes I-reg.
itr: run 3.2.41

skrieties: skrienas, skrējās, skriesies
I-reg. itr: race (one another) 3.3
skumjš, skumja adj.sad 3.3
SL **slaucīt: slauka, slaucīja, slaucīs** III-ī
tr: wipe, sweep 4.1
noslaucīt wipe off
slaucīties; slaukās, slaucījās, slaucīsies itr: wipe oneself dry, towel
slikts, slikta adj. bad 3.1 //4.1
slikti adv. badly; unwell, ill 3.3
SM **smags, smaga** adj. heavy 3.2
smieties: smejas, smējās, smiesies
I-reg. itr: laugh 3.3 //5.2
smilts,-tij Fi sand; usu.pl. **smiltis**
SN **sniegt: sniedz, sniedza, sniegs** I-reg.
tr: hand, offer 4.2
iesniegt hand in
SO **soma, somai** Fa bag, satchel 2.3
rokas soma handbag, purse 5.1
SP **spalva, spalvai** Fa pen 2.3
spēlēt: spēlē, spēlēja, spēlēs II-ē
tr: play (instrument) 4.2.62
spēlēties: spēlējas, spēlējās, spēlēsies
itr: play (games) 3.3
spogulis,-lim Mi mirror 3.2
ST **staigāt: staigā, staigāja, staigās** II-ā
itr: walk about, stroll 5.2
starp +ac.sg. between 4.2
starpbrīdis,-dim Mi intermission 3.3
stāstīt: stāsta, stāstīja, stāstīs
III-ī tr: tell, narrate 2.2
pastāstīt tell, recount 5.1
stāsts, stāstam Ma story, tale 4.2
stāvēt: stāv, stāvēja, stāvēs III-ē
itr: stand 3.2
strādāt: strādā, strādāja, strādās
II-ā itr/tr: work 5.1
stumt: stumj, stūma, stums I-mj/m
tr: push 4.1
pastumt push a little
stunda,-dai Fa hour; lesson 3.3
SU **sula, sulai** Fa juice, sap 4.1
SV **svaigs, svaiga** adj. fresh 5.2
svārki, svārkiem Ma coat; skirt 4.1
svērt: sver, svēra, svērs I-reg.
tr: weigh 5.2
svērties: sveras, svērās, svērsies 5.2
itr: weigh oneself; incline toward
svētdiena,-nai Fa Sunday 4.2
svētdien on Sunday
sviests,-tam Ma butter 4.1
Š **šai/šaj-** pr. see **šis**
šaipus +gen.sg. on this side of 5.2
šaurs, šaura adj. narrow 3.1
***šejiene**: only in **no šejienes** from here
uz šejieni to here 4.2 //5.1
šie nom.pl. of **šis**
šis, šī pr. this 3.1.13 & 3.2.2
see Declension Chart for all forms
šķīvis, šķīvim Mi plate 4.1
šo- pr. see **šis**
šodien adv. today 2.1
šonedēļ adv. this week 4.2
šorīt adv. this morning 4.1
šovasar adv. this summer 5.2
štats,-tam Ma federated state as in USA
TA **tā** [tâ] adv. thus, so 3.2 //5.2
tā- pr. see **tas**
tad adv. then 2.1
tāds, tāda pr. such, of such kind 3.1
tāds pats, tāda pati pr. of the same kind, similar, alike 4.2.42
tāfele,-lei Fe blackboard, chalkboard 5.1
tagad adv. now 2.1
tai/taj- pr. see **tas**
taisīt: taisa, taisīja, taisīs III-ī
tr: make 4.1
uztaisīt make, prepare
taisīties: taisās, taisījās, taisīsies
itr: get ready 4.1
taka, takai Fa path 5.2
tālāk adv. further 5.1
tāls, tāla adj. far, remote 5.2
tālu adv. far away 5.2
tāpat adv.likewise, in the same way 2.1
tāpat kā adv. in the same way as 4.2
tas, tā pr. that 3.2.2 & .5; it 3.3.2
see Declension Chart for all forms
tas pats, tā pati pr. the same 4.2
tase, tasei Fe cup 4.1
tavs, tava pr. your-sg. (thy, thine) 2.2
TE **te** adv. here 2.1
tecēt: tęk, tecēja, tecēs I-k/c
itr: flow, run 4.1
teikt: teic, teica, teiks I-reg.
tr: say 4.2.94
atteikt say in return
teikums,-mam Ma sentence 4.2
tēja, tējai Fa tea 4.1
tējkarote,-tei Fe teaspoon 4.1
televizija,-jai Fa television 3.3
televizors,-ram Ma television set 3.1
telts, teltij Fi tent 5.2
temperātūra,-rai Fa temperature 5.2
tērēt: tērē, tērēja, tērēs II-ē
tr: spend, use; waste 5.1
iztērēt spend/waste all
notērēt use up
tev- pr. see **tu**
tęvs, tęvam Ma father 2.3
TI **tiek-** vb. see **tikt**
tiešām adv. indeed, really 4.1

tieši adv. directly, exactly 4.2
tievs, tieva adj. thin as a stick 3.1
tik adv. so 3.3
tik un tâ adv. all the same, anyway 4.2
tikai adv. only 2.2
tikt: tiek, tika, tiks I-k/c 4.2
lk: become, get 4.2; itr: get, arrive
tīrīt: tīra, tīrīja, tīrīs III-ī
tr: clean 4.1
tīrs, tīra adj. clean 3.1
tīšām adv. intentionally, on purpose 5.2
tītars,-ram Ma turkey 5.2
TO **to-** pr. see **tas**
tomēr adv. nevertheless, still 5.1
TR **trauks,-kam** Ma vessel, dish 3.1
trešdiena,-nai Fa Wednesday 4.2
trešdien on Wednesday
trīs num. three 2.2.16-c. & 5.2.2
trīspadsmit 13; **trīsdesmit** 30
trokšņot: trokšņo, trokšņoja, trokšņos
itr: be noisy, make noises 3.2
trūkt: trūkst, trūka, trūks I-st 5.1.52
itr: snap apart; tr: lack gen.obj.
TU **tu** pr. you-sg. (thou); gen: **tevis**,
dat: **tev**, ac: **tevi**, loc: **tevī** 2.1.31
tūkstotis,-tim Mi thousand 5.2.3-b.
tūkstoš indecl. thousand
tukšs, tukša adj. empty 4.1
tūliņ / tūlīt adv. right away, at once
tūlīt / tūliņ " " " 3.3
tumšs, tumša adj. dark 3.3
tur adv. there 3.2
***turiene** only in the phrases:
no turienes from there 5.1
uz turieni to there, that way 4.2
tūrists,-tam Ma tourist 5.2
turpināt: turpina, turpināja, turpinās
tr/itr continue 5.1 III-ā
tuvs, tuva adj. near 5.2
tuvu adv. near-by 5.2.62
U **ūdens, ūdenim** Mi water 4.1
un conj. and 2.1
universālveikals,-lam Ma
department store 5.1
upe, upei Fe river 5.2
uz +ac.sg. to, at, in (directional) 4.1
+gen.sg. on, upon 5.1 & 2 // & 2
uzacs,-cij Fi eyebrow 2.3
uzmanīgs,-ga adj. careful; attentive 3.3
uzvesties: uzvedas,-vedās,-vedīsies
I-reg. itr: behave 3.3
VA **vadāt: vadā,-dāja,-dās** II-ā lead about
pavadāt take/drive here & there 5.2
vadīt: vada,-dīja,-dīs III-ī
tr: lead, guide; drive, steer 5.1
pavadīt accompany, spend time
vadītāja,-jai Fa fem. leader, manager 5.1
vadītājs,-jam Ma male leader, manager 5.1
vai conj. or; intr. see 2.1.51
vairāk adv. more 5.1
vairāki,-kas num/pr. several 3.1
vairs adv. (not) any more 2.1
vajadzēt: vajag, vajadzēja, vajadzēs III-ē
tr: have a need of + gen.obj. 5.1.43
vajadzīgs,-ga adj. needed, necessary 5.1
vakars,-ram Ma evening 3.3
vakar adv. yesterday 2.1
valsts,-tij Fi independent state 5.2
vanna, vannai Fa bathtub 3.2
vannas istaba bathroom 3.2
varbūt adv. maybe 2.1
vārdnīca,-cai Fa dictionary 4.2
vārds, vārdam Ma word; name 4.2
varēt: var, varēja, varēs III-ē
tr: be able (to), can 4.1
vasara,-rai Fa summer 5.1
VE **vecs, veca** adj. old 3.1
vecāki,-kiem Ma parents 2.3
ved- vb. see **vest**
vēders,-ram Ma stomach, belly 2.3
veikals,-lam Ma store 5.1
ēdienu veikals diner
pārtikas veikals grocery store
universālveikals department store
veikties: veicas, veicās, veiksies I-reg.
tr/itr: do well, be good at 4.2.82-a
vēl adv. more, in addition 2.1
k__ vēl intr. **wh_** else
velk- vb. see **vilkt**
veļa, veļai Fa underclothes, linen 3.2
veselS, -la adj. hale, sound; whole 4.2
nevesels unwell
vēss, vēsa adj. cool, chilly 4.1
vest: ved, veda, vedīs I-reg.
tr carry (in a vehicle) 5.1
atvest take/carry hither
VI **viegls,-la** adj. light; easy 3.2
vienāds,-da adj. identical, alike 4.2
vienalga k__ intr. no matter **wh__** 4.2
viens, viena num/pr. one 2.2 & 5.2.21-a.
vienpadsmit eleven 3.3 & 5.2.2
viens pats, viena pati pr.
by oneself, alone 4.2.42
viesistaba,-bai Fa guest or living room
vieta, vietai Fa place, spot 5.2 //3.1
vidus, vidum Mu center, middle 3.2
vilciens,-nam Ma train 5.2
vilkt: velk, vilka, vilks I-k/c 4.1
tr: pul, drag; put on clothes/footwear
atvilkt pull open
novilkt take off
uzvilkt put on

vīns, vīnam Ma wine 4.2
viņš, viņa pr. he, she 2.1; they 2.2.16
vīrietis,-tim Mi man, male 5.1
vīrs, vīram Ma man 4.2
virs +gen.sg. over, above, on top of 5.2
virtuve,-vei Fe kitchen 3.1
vis emph. too, at all 4.1
visāds,-da adj. of all kind 3.2
vismaz adv. at least 5.1
vispirms adv. first of all
viss, visa pr. the whole, all 4.1.91-b.
  viss alone: everything 4.1.91-d.
  visi,-sas pl: all (the) 4.1.91-a.
  visi alone: everybody 4.1.91-c.
viss kas pr. all kinds of things 5.1
viss kas cits pr. everything else 5.1
vista, vistai Fa hen; chicken 5.2
visur adv. everywhere 5.2
visur kur adv. anywhere at all 5.2

Z **zābaks,-kam** Ma boot 4.2
zaļš, zaļa adj. green 3.2
zeķe, zeķei Fe sock, stocking 3.2
zem +gen.sg. under, below 5.1 & 5.2
zeme, zemei Fe land, country; soil 5.2
zems, zema adj. low 3.1
zēns, zēnam Ma boy 2.1
ziema, ziemai Fa winter
ziepes,-pēm Fe soap 4.1
zils, zila adj. blue 3.2
zīme, zīmei Fe sign. mark 4.2
zīmulis,-lim Mi pencil 2.3
zināt: zina, zināja, zinās III-ā
  tr: know 4.2
  uzzināt find out, learn 5.2
ziņkārīgs,-ga adj. inquisitive, curious
zirgs, zirgam Ma horse 5.2 //3.3
zivs, zivij Fi fish 5.2
zobs, zobam Ma tooth 4.1
zods, zodam Ma chin 2.3
zvejot: zvejo, zvejoja, zvejos II-o
  tr: fish 5.2
Z **žakete,-tei** jacket 3.3
žēl part. too bad, a pity 2.1

ENGLISH-LATVIAN VOCABULARY

CONTAINS THE WORDS FROM THE READING SELECTIONS (BUT NOT THE SUPPLEMENTS)

THIS VOCABULARY IS TO HELP YOU TO RECALL THE LATVIAN WORDS THAT YOU ALREADY HAVE MEMORIZED. FOR FRESH LEARNING GO TO THE LATVIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY OR YOUR WORD CARD FILE.

EACH ENTRY CONSISTS OF FOUR SEGMENTS IN THIS ORDER:

1. English word or phrase (CAPITALIZED),
2. Latvian word or phrase **(boldfaced)**,
3. grammatical identification of the Latv. entry,
4. the first occurence of the Latv. entry (the lesson number sometimes followed by the the number of the grammar section where the Latv. entry is discussed).

IN THE LATVIAN ENTRIES only the key (first) form, not all principal parts, is given. If you do not recall the principal parts, go to the LATVIAN-English dictionary (or your word card file).

A
A, AN **kāds** pr. 5.1.61
not a **nekāds** 5.1.61-b.
ABLE: be able **varēt** III-ē 4.1
ABOUT, concerning **par** +ac.sg. 4.2.42
" , circa **apmēram** adv. 5.2
ABOVE **virs** +gen.sg. 5.2

AC
ACCIDENTALLY **netīšām** adv. 5.2
ACCOMPANY **pavadīt** III-ī 5.1
ACCOMPLISH **izdarīt** III-ī 5.1
ACHE, have an ache **sāpēt** III-ē 3.3.63
ACROSS **pār** +ac.sg. 4.2
pāri adv. w. dat. 5.2.61

AD
ADD: add up **saskaitīt** III-ī 5.2
in addition **vēl** adv. 2.1

AF
AFTER **pēc** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
(going) after dat. + **paka]** 4.2.95
AFTERNOON **pēcpusdiena** Fa 3.3

AG
AGAIN **atkal** adv. 2.1
again, more **vēl** adv. 2.1
AGAINST **pret** +ac.sg. 4.2

AH
AHEAD, forward **uz priekšu** 4.2
" , in front of **priekšā** 3.2

AI
AID **palīdzēt** III-ē 5.1
AIDE, masc. **palīgs** Ma 5.1
" , fem. **palīdze** Fe 5.1
AIR **gaiss** Ma 5.2
AIRPLANE **lidmašīna** Fa 5.2

AL
ALIKE, similar **tāds pats** pr. 4.2
" , identical **vienāds** adj. 4.2
ALL, countable: **visi** pr. 4.1.91-a. & 2.2
" uncountable: **viss** pr. 4.1.91-b.
ALL KINDS OF **visāds** adj. 3.2
ALL KINDS OF THINGS **viss kas** pr. 5.1
ALL OVER **pa** +ac.sg. 4.2.1
ALL RIGHT **labi** adv. 3.3
IN ALL **pavisam** adv. 5.1
ALMOST **gandrīz** adv. 5.1
ALONE **viens pats** pr. 4.2.42
ALONG: alongside **gar** +ac.sg. 4.2
along with **līdz** =dat. 4.2.11
get along with **satikt** I-k/c 5.2
ALREADY **jau** adv. 2.2
ALSO **arī** adv. 2.1

AN
AND **un** conj. 2.1; **ar** prep. 4.2.92
ANIMAL **dzīvnieks** Ma 5.2
domestic animal **mājas dzīvnieks** 5.2
wild animal **meža dzīvnieks** 5.2
ANOTHER: 2nd mentioned: **otrs** 2.2
not the 2nd: **cits** 2.3
ANSWER, noun: **atbilde** Fe 4.2
" , verb: **atbildēt** III-ē 2.1
" = call back **atsaukties** I-reg. 5.1
ANY = some: **kāds** 5.1.61
ANY MORE **vairs** adv. (w. negative) 2.1
ANYWAY **tik un tā** adv.phr. 4.2
ANYWHERE (at all) **visur kur** adv. 5.2

AP
APART **nost** adv. 5.2
APPEAR = show up **ierasties** I-reg. 5.1
" = seem **likties** 4.2
APPROACH **pienākt** I-k/c 5.1
APPROXIMATELY **apmēram** adv. 5.2

AR
ARM and hand **roka** Fa 2.3
AROUND **ap** +ac.sg. 4.2
ARRIVE = reach **tikt** I-k/c 4.2
" = show up **ierasties** I-reg. 5.1
ARTICLE = object **priekšmets** 5.2
" = writing **raksts** 4.2

AS
ASK = beg **lūgt** I-reg. 4.1
" = demand **prasīt** III-ī 4.2
" = question **jautāt** II-ā 2.1
ASSIGN (a task) **uzdot** I-reg. 4.2

AT
AT = close, near **pie** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
" as in look at **uz** +ac.sg. 4.1 & 4.2
AT ALL, emphatic: **vis** (+ negative) 4.1
not at all **nemaz** adv. 4.1
AT LAST **beidzot** adv. 3.3
AT LEAST **vismaz** 5.1
AT ONCE **tūlīt/tūliņ** adv. 3.3
ATTENTIVE **uzmanīgs** adj. 3.3

AU
AUNT **krustmāte** Fe 5.2
AUTOMOBILE **automobilis** Mi 5.2
AUTUMN **rudens** Mi 5.2

AW
AWAIT **sagaidīt** III-ī 5.2
AWAY (to somewhere) **projām/prom** adv. 4.2
" = apart **nost** adv. 5.2
right away **tūlīt/tūliņ** adv. 3.3

BA
BACK, spine **mugura** Fa 2.3
" , rear **aizmugure** Fe 3.2
in the back/rear **aizmugurē** loc. 3.2
(move) back **atpaka]** adv. 4.1
BAD **slikts** adj. 3.1
badly **slikti** adv. 3.3
too bad **žēl** part. 1.2
BAG, satchel **soma** 2.3
BANK (river) **krasts** Ma 5.2
BASK (sun) **sau]oties** II-o 5.2
BATHE (swim) **peldēties** III-ē 5.2
BATHTUB **vanna** Fa 3.2
BATHROOM **vannas istaba** 3.2

BE
BE **būt** I-irreg. 2.1 & 2.2
not be **nebūt** I-irreg. 2.1 & 2.2
come into being **rasties** I-reg. 5.1
BEACH **jūrmala** Fa 5.2
BEARD **bārda** Fa 4.2
BEAUTIFUL **skaists** adj. 4.1
BECAUSE **jo** intr. 3.3.74
BECAUSE OF **dē]** +gen.sg. 5.2
BECOME = get **dabūt** II-ū 4.2
" = turn into **k]ūt** I-st 4.1; **tikt** I-k/c
" = suit **piestāvēt** III-ē 3.3.62 //4.2

BED **gulta** Fa 3.2
BEDROOM **guļamistaba** Fa 3.2
BEFORE **pirms** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
BEGIN tr: **sākt** I-k/c 4.1
" itr: **sākties** I-k/c 3.3
BEGINNING **sākums** Ma 5.2
BEHAVE **uzvesties** I-reg. 3.3
BEHIND **aiz** +gen.sg. 5.2
BELLY **vēders** Ma 2.3
BELOW = down **apakšā** loc. 3.2
" = under **zem** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
BERRY **oga** Fa 5.2
BESIDE **pie** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
BESIDES **bez** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
BETTER **labāk** adv. 5.1
BETWEEN **starp** +ac.sg. 4.2
BEYOND **aiz** +gen.sg. 5.2
BI BIG **liels** adj. 3.1
BIRD **putns** Ma 5.2
BIT: a (little) bit **drusku** adv. 5.1
BL BLACK **melns** adj. 3.2
BLACKBOARD **tāfele** Fe 5.1
BLOUSE **blūze** Fe 3.3
BLOW **pūst** I-š/t 4.1
BLUE **zils** adj. 3.2
BO BOAT **laiva** Fa 5.2
BODY (living) **ķermenis** Mi 4.1
BOOK **grāmata** Fa 2.3
BOOT **zābaks** Ma 4.2
BOTH **abi** pr. 2.2
on both sides **abpus** +gen.sg. 5.2
BOTTLE **pudele** Fe 4.2
BOY **zēns** Ma 2.1
schoolboy **skolnieks** Ma 2.1
BR BREAD **maize** Fe 4.1
BREAK, tear **plēst** I-š/s 4.1
" to pieces **saplēst** "
BREAKFAST **brokastis** Fi 4.1
BROAD, wide **plats** adj. 3.1
" , expansive **plašs** adj. 3.1
BROTHER **brālis** Mi 2.2
BROWN **brūns** adj. 3.2
BU BUNDLE **paka** Fa 5.2
BUS **autobuss** Ma 5.2
BUSH **krūms** Ma 5.2
BUSINESS **darīšana** Fa 5.2
BUT **bet** conj. 2.1
BUTTER **sviests** Ma 4.1
BUY **pirkt** I-k/c 5.1
buying **pirkšana** Fa 5.1
BY BY = past **gar** +ac.sg. 4.2
= at **pie** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
near-by **tuvu** adv. 5.2.62
C CALL **saukt** I-reg. 4.1
CA CALL back **atsaukties** I-reg. 4.1
CALL on (in class) **izsaukt** 4.1
be called **saukties** 4.1
CALM **mierīgs** adj. 3.3
calmly **mierīgi** adv.
CAN = be able **varēt** III-ē 4.1
= know how **mācēt** III-ē 4.1
CAN, tin **kārba** Fa 5.2
CAR **mašīna/automašīna** Fa 5.1
automobilis Mi 5.2
CAREFUL **uzmanīgs** adj. 3.3
carefully **uzmanīgi** adv.
CARRY in arms **nest** I-reg. 5.1
CARRY in vehicle **vest** I-reg. 5.1
carry hither **atvest**
CARRY here & there **pavadāt** II-ā 5.2
CARRY OUT **izdarīt** III-ī 5.1
CATCH (try to) **ķert** I-reg. 5.2
catch, seize **noķert**
CE CEILING **griesti** Ma 3.1
CENT **cents** Ma 5.1
CENTER = middle **vidus** Mu 3.2
" = complex **centrs** Ma 5.1
CH CHAIR **krēsls** Ma 3.1
CHALK **krīts** Ma 5.1
chalkboard **tāfele** Fe 5.1
CHAMBER **istaba** Fa 3.1
CHAT **(sa)runāties** II-ā 3.3
CHEAP **lēts** adj. 5.2
CHEERY **priecīgs** adj. 3.3
CHEESE **siers** Ma 4.2
CHEST OF DRAWERS **kumode** Fe 3.2
CHICKEN **vista** Fa 5.2
CHILD **bērns** Ma 2.2
CHIN **zods** Ma 2.3
CITY **pilsēta** Fa 5.2
CL CLASS / classroom **klase** Fe 3.3
CLEAN, verb: **tīrīt** III-ī 4.1
" , adj: **tīrs** 3.1
CLEAR **skaidrs** adj. 4.2
make clear **skaidrot** II-o 4.2
CLIMB **kāpt** I-pj/p
CLOCK **pulkstenis** Mi 3.3
o'clock **pulksten**
CLOSE-BY **pie** +gen.sg.; **klāt** adv. 5.1
CLOSET **skapis** Mi 3.1
CLOTH **drēbe** Fe 3.2 & 5.1
CLOTHES **drēbes** pl. 3.2
underclothes **apakšveļa** Fa 3.2
CLOTHE **ģērbt** I-bj/b 4.1
CLOTHING **apģērbs** Ma 5.1
CO COAST, shore **krasts** Ma 5.2
COAT **svārki** Ma 4.1
COFFEE **kafija** Fa 4.1

COLD **auksts** adj. 4.1
COLOR **krāsa** Fa 3.2
COME **nākt** I-k/c 2.2
COME OUT = result **iznākt** 5.2
COME INTO BEING **rasties** I-reg. 5.1
COMPANY, firm **firma** Fa 5.1
COMPLETE, finish **nobeigt** I-reg. 5.2
COMPOSITION **sacerējums** Ma 4.2
CONCERN, involvement **darīšana** Fa 5.2
CONCLUSION **beigas** Fa 5.2
CONDUCT **vadīt** III-Ī 5.1
CONTINUE **turpināt** III-ā 5.1
COOL, chilly **vēss** adj. 4.1
CORRECT: adj: **pareizs** 4.2
verb: **labot** II-o 4.2
COST **maksāt** II-ā 5.1
COST, price **cena** Fa 5.1
COUNT **skaitīt** III-Ī 5.2
count up **saskaitīt**
COUNTER **lete** Fe 5.1
COUNTRY, land **zeme** Fe 5.2
" , pol. state **valsts** Fi 5.2
COUNTRYSIDE **lauki** Ma 5.2
COUSIN, male **brālēns** Ma 5.1
" , fem. **māsīca** Fa 5.1
COW **govs** Fi 5.2
CR CROWD **bars** Ma 5.1
CRY, weep **raudāt** III-ā 4.2
CU CUP **tase** Fe 4.1
CUPBOARD **skapis** Mi 3.1
CURIOUS **ziņkārīgs** adj. 3.3
CURTAIN **aizkars** Ma 3.1
CUT **griêzt** I-ž/z 4.1
cut off **nogriêzt**
DA DARK **tumšs** adj. 3.3
DAY **diena** Fa 3.3
good day! **labdien!** 1.2
today **šodien** adv. 2.1
DE DEAR **dārgs** adj. 5.1
DEFINITE **noteikts** adj. 3.3
definitely **noteikti** adv.
DEGREE **grāds** Ma 5.2
DELAY **kavēt** II-e 4.2
DEMAND, ask **prasīt** III-Ī 4.2
DEPARTMENT STORE **universālveikals** Ma
DESIRE, want **gribēt** III-ē 4.1 //5.1
refl: **gribēties** III-ē 5.1.43
DESK **rakstāmgalds** Ma 3.2
DI DICTATE **diktēt** II-ē 4.2
dictation **diktāts** Ma 4.2
DICTIONARY **vārdnīca** Fa 4.2
DIFFICULT **grūts** adj. 5.2
with difficulty **grūti** adv. 5.2
DINER (place) **ēdienu veikals** 5.1
DINING ROOM **ēdamistaba** Fa 3.1
DINING TABLE **ēdamgalds** Ma 3.1
DIRECTION, side **puse** Fe 4.1
in which dierection **uz kuru pusi** 4.2
in ___ direction **uz ____ pusi** "
DIRECTLY **tieši** adv. 4.2
DIRTY **netīrs** adj.
DISH, vessel **trauks** Ma 3.1
DIVAN **dīvāns** Ma 3.1
DO DO **darīt** III-Ī 2.1
do in a single act **izdarīt** 5.1
be doing/faring **klāties** 5.2.51
DOLLAR **dolārs** Ma 5.1
DOMESTIC ANIMAL **mājas dzīvnieks** 5.2
DOOR **durvis** Fi 3.1
DOWN **lejā** loc/adv. 3.2
down from **no** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
downstairs **lejā / apakšā** 3.2
down(ward) **uz leju** 4.2
DR DRAG, pull **vilkt** I-k/c 4.1
DRAWER **atvilktne** Fe 3.1
chest of drawers **kumode** Fe 3.2
DRESS, noun: **kleita** Fa 3.3
" , vb.tr: **ģērbt** I-bj/b 4.1
" oneself, get dressed **ģērbties** 3.3
DRINK, noun: **dzēriens** Ma 5.1
" , verb: **dzert** I-reg. 4.1
drink out/up **izdzert** 4.2
DRIVE, noun: **brauciens** Ma 5.1
" , verb: **braukt** I-reg. 5.1
driving **braukšana** Fa 5.1
DRIVE ABOUT, itr: **braukāt** II-ā 5.2.63
" " , tr: **vadāt** II-ā 5.2.63
DRIVE, steer **vadīt** III-Ī 5.1
DW DWARF **rūķis** Mi 4.2
mostly diminutive: **rūķītis**
DWELL **dzīvot** II-o 3.1
DYE, color **krāsa** Fa 3.2
EA EACH **katrs** pr. 2.3
EACH ONE'S OWN **katrs savs** pr. 4.2.43
EAR **auss** Fi 2.3
EASY **viegls** adj. 3.2
EAT **ēst** I-reg. 4.1
eat up **apēst** 4.2
eat one's full **paēst** 5.1
EDGE, side **mala** Fa 3.2
EGG **ola** Fa 4.1
EI EIGHT **astoņi** num. 2.2 & 5.2
eighteen **astoņpadsmit** 5.2
eighty **astoņdesmit** 5.2
EL ELEVEN **vienpadsmit** num. 3.3 & 5.2
ELSE **vēl** adv. 2.1; **cits** num. 2.3
ELSEWHERE **citur** adv. 5.2
EMPTY **tukšs** adj. 4.1
EN ENCOUNTER, meet **satikt** I-k/c 5.2
END, conclusion **beigas** Fa 5.2

END, tip **gals** Ma 5.1
END, vb.tr: **beigt** I-reg. 4.1
", " itr: **beigties** I-reg. 3.3
ENGINE **mašīna** Fa 5.1
ENOUGH **diezgan** adv. 3.2
have enough **pietikt** I-k/c 5.2.53
ERROR, mistake **kļūda** Fa 4.2
ESPECIALLY **sevišķi** adv. 3.3
ESPY **pamanīt** III-i 5.1
EVEN = in fact **pat** adv. 3.3
EVEN IF **ja arī** intr. 4.2
EVENING **vakars** Ma 3.3
good evening! **labvakar!** 1.2
EVERY **katrs** pr. 2.3
EVERYBODY **visi** pr. 4.1.91-c.
EVERYTHING **viss** pr. 4.1.91-d.
EVERYTHING ELSE **viss kas** cits pr. 5.1
EVERYWHERE **visur** adv. 5.2
EX EXACTLY **tieši** adv. 4.2
EXAMINATION **pārbaudījums** Ma 4.2
EXAMINE, test **pārbaudīt** III-ī 4.2
" , inspect **apskatīt** III-ī 4.1
EXCLAIM **iesaukties** I-reg. 4.1 & 5.1
EXPAND (itself) **izplesties** I-s/t 5.2
EXPANSIVE **plašs** adj. 3.1
EXPENSIVE **dārgs** adj. 5.1
EXPLAIN **paskaidrot** II-o 4.2
EXPRESSION **izteiciens** Ma 4.2
EXTEND (itself) **izplesties** I-s/t 5.2
EY EYE **acs** Fi 2.3
EYEBROW **uzacs** Fi 2.3
FA FABRIC, cloth **drēbe** Fe 5.1
FACE **seja** Fa 3.1
FALL, autumn **rudens** Mi 5.2
FAMILY **ģimene** Fe 5.1
FAR, adj: **tāls** 5.2
adv: **tālu** 5.2.62
FARE = do **klāties** I-reg. 5.2.51
iet I-irreg. "
FARM **ferma** Fa 5.2
FATHER **tēvs** Ma 2.3
FE FEEL, vb.tr: **just** I-i 5.2
" itr: **justies** " 5.2.52-b.
FEMALE, woman **sieviete** Fe 5.1
FEW **daži** num. 3.1
a few **pāris** Mi-indecl. 5.1
FI FIELD **lauks** Ma 5.2
FIGURE OUT **izdomāt** II-ā 4.2
FINALLY **beidzot** adv. 3.3
FIND, run across **(at)rast** I-reg. 5.1
" after a search: **sameklēt** II-ē 4.2
FIND OUT **uzzināt** III-ā 5.2
FINGER **pirksts** Ma 2.3
FINISH, terminate **beigt** I-reg. 4.1
" , complete **nobeigt** " 5.2
be finished **beigties** " 3.3
FIRM, business **firma** Fa 5.1
", definite **noteikts** adj. 3.3
FIRST OF ALL **vispirms** adv. 4.1
FISH, noun: **zivs** Fi 5.2
", verb: **zvejot** II-o 5.2
FIT, suit **piestāvēt** III-ē 3.3.62
FIVE **pieci** num. 2.2 & 5.2
fifteen **piecpadsmit** 5.2.2
fifty **piecdesmit** "
FLOAT, be afloat **peldēt** III-ē 5.2
FLOOR **grīda** Fa 3.1
FLOW **tecēt** III-e 4.1
FLY **lidot** II-o 5.2
FO FOOD, dish **ēdiens** Ma 5.1
FOOD(STUFFS) **pārtika** Fa 5.1
FOOT and leg **kāja** Fa 2.3
FOOTWEAR **apavi** Ma 5.1
FOR, because **jo** intr. 3.3.74
", in exchange **par** +ac.sg. 4.1 & 4.2
" the sake of **dēļ** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
FOREHEAD **piere** Fe 2.3
FORENOON **priekšpusdiena** Fa 3.3
FOREST **mežs** Ma 4.2
FORGET **aizmirst** I-st 5.1
FORK (table) **dakšiņa** Fa 4.1
FORSAKE **atstāt** I-reg. 4.2
FORTY **četrdesmit** num. 5.2.2
FORWARD **uz priekšu** 4.2
FOUR **četri** num. 2.2 & 5.2
fourteen **četrpadsmit** 5.2.2
FOWL **putns** Ma 5.2
FR FREE **brīvs** adj. 5.2
FREQUENTLY **bieži** adv.3.3
FRESH **svaigs** adj. 5.2
FRIDAY **piektdiena** Fa 4.2
on Friday **piektdien** "
FRIEND, male **draugs** Ma 2.2
" , fem. **draudzene** Fe 2.2
FROM **no** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
FRONT, the **priekša** Fa 3.2
in front of **priekšā** loc. 3.2
FRUIT **auglis** Mi 5.2
FU FULL **pilns** adj. 4.1
FUR **āda** Fa 5.1
FURNITURE, single piece of **mēbele** Fe
" , collectively **mēbeles** pl. 3.1
FURTHER **tālāk** adv. 5.1
GA GALLON **galons** Ma 5.2
GARDEN **dārzs** Ma 3.1
GE GET, receive **dabūt** II-ū 4.2
", turn into **kļūt** I-st 4.1
GET ALONG (WITH) **satikt** I-k/c 5.2
GET OFF (a vehicle) **izkāpt** I-pj/p 5.1
GET ON " " **iekāpt** "
GET READY a. **gatavoties** II-o 5.2
b. **taisīties** III-ī 4.1

GET STARTED, begin **sākties** I-k/c 3.3
GI GIRL **meitene** Fe 2.1
schoolgirl **skolniece** Fe 2.1
GIVE dot, often **iedot** I-reg. 4.1
give up **uzdot** 4.2
GL GLASS (drinking) **glāze** Fe 4.1
GLOVE **cimds** Ma 3.3
GO GO on foot **iet** I-irreg. 2.2 & 3.1.15
GO in a vehicle **braukt** I-reg. 5.1
go/drive to **aizbraukt** " "
GODFATHER **krusttēvs** Ma 5.2
GODMOTHER **krustmāte** Fe "
GOOD **labs** adj. 3.1
good bye! **ar Dievu!** 1.2
good morning! **labrīt!** 1.2
good day! **labdien!** "
good evening! **labvakar!** "
good night! **ar labu nakti!** "
be good at **veikties** 4.2.82-a.
GR GRADE, mark **atzīme** Fe 4.2
GRAY **pelēks** adj. 3.2
ref. to hair: **sirms** adj. 4.2
GREAT **liels** adj. 3.1
GREEN **zaļš** adj. 3.2
GROCERIES **pārtika** Fa 5.1
grocery store **pārtikas veikals** 5.1
GROW **augt** I-g/dz 3.1
GUESTROOM **viesistaba** Fa 3.1
GUIDE **vadīt** III-ī 5.1
HA HAIR, one strand mats **mats** Ma 2.3
", collectively **mati** pl. " "
HALE, sound **vesels** adj. 4.2
HALF **puse** Fe 4.1
as a prefix: **pus-** 4.1
half year **pusgads** Ma 5.2
and a half **-arpus** num. 5.2.64
two and a half **divarpus** "
one and a half **pusotra** "
HAND and arm **roka** Fa 2.3
handbag **rokas soma** 5.1
HAND, give **sniegt** I-reg. 4.2
hand in **iesniegt** " "
HAPPEN **notikt** I-k/c 4.2
HAPPY **laimīgs** adj. 3.3
HARD **grūts** adj. 5.2
HAT **cepure** Fe 3.3
HAVE - see 2.3.4
HE HE **viņš** pr. 2.1
HEAD **galva** Fa 2.3
HEAR **dzirdēt** III-ē 4.1
HEAVEN **debesis** Fi 5.2
HEAVY **smags** adj. 3.2
HELP **palīdzēt** III-ē 5.1
HELPER, male **palīgs** Ma 5.1
" , fem. **palīdze** Fe "

HEN **vista** Fa 5.2
HER, gen: **viņas; ac. viņu** pr. (see **viņa**)
HERS, of her **viņas**; for her **viņai**
HERE **te** adv. 2.1
from here **no šejienes** 5.1
to here **uz šejieni** 4.2
HI HIGH **augsts** adj. 3.1
HILL **kalns** Ma 5.2
HIM **viņu**; for him **viņam** pr. (see **viņš**)
HINDER **kavēt** II-e 4.2
HIS **viņa** pr.
HITHER **uz šejieni** 4.2
HO HOME **mājas** Fa 3.1
HORSE **zirgs** Ma 5.2
HOT **karsts** adj. 4.1
HOUR **stunda** Fa 3.3
HOUSE **māja** Fa 3.1
HOW in adj. questions: **kāds** 3.1.42
" " adv. " **kâ** 3.3.73
HOW MUCH/MANY **cik** 5.1.54
HU HUE, color **krāsa** Fa 3.2
HUNDRED **simts** Ma, **simt** indecl. 5.2.3-b.
HURT, ache **sāpēt** III-e 3.3.63
I I **es** pr. (see Declension Chart)
ICE **ledus** Mu 3.1
icebox **ledusskapis** Mi 3.1
IF **ja** intr: 4.2.81-a.
even if **ja arī** intr. 4.2
IDENTICAL **vienāds** adj. 4.2
ILL, badly **slikti** adv. 3.3
IMAGINE **iedomāties** II-a 5.2
IN IN, directional: **uz** +ac.sg. 4.2
IN / INSIDE **iekšā** loc. 3.2
INSIDE, the **iekša** Fe 3.2
INATTENTIVE **neuzmanīgs** adj. 3.3
INCLINE TOWARD **svērties** I-reg. 5.2
INCORRECT **nepareizs** adj. 4.2
INDEED **tiešām** adv. 4.1
INQUISITIVE **ziņkārīgs** adj. 3.3
INSPECT **apskatīt** III-i 4.1
INSTRUCTION, lessons **mācības** Fa 4.2
INTELLECT **prāts** Ma 4.2
INTEND **domāt** II-a + infinitive 4.2
INTENTIONALLY **tīšām** adv. 5.2
unintentionally **netīšām** adv. 5.2
INTERESTING **interesants** adj. 4.2
INTERMISSION **starpbrīdis** Mi 3.3
INVENT **izdomāt** II-ā 4.2
IS ISLAND **sala** Fa 5.2
IT IT **tas** pr. 3.3.2 (& Declension Chart)
J JACKET **žakete** Fe 3.3
JAR (container) **burka** Fa 5.2
JOYFUL **priecīgs** adj. 3.3
JUICE **sula** Fa 4.1
JUMP **lēkt** I-reg. 5.2

JUST, even **pat** adv. 3.3
JUST NOW **nupat** adv. 4.2
K KEY **atslēga** Fa 3.1
KIND: all kinds of **visāds** adj. 3.2
of such kind **tāds** pr. 3.1.42-b.
of what kind **kāds** " 3.1.42
KITCHEN **virtuve** Fe 3.1
KNIFE **nazis** Mi 4.1
KNOW facts **zināt** III-ā 4.2
KNOW, recognize **pazīt** I-st 4.1
KNOW HOW **mācēt** III-ē 5.2
LA LABOR, noun: **darbs** Ma 4.2
" , verb: **strādāt** II-ā 5.1
LACK **trūkt** I-st 5.1.41 & .42
LADY **kundze** Fe 5.1
LAKE **ezers** Ma 5.2
LAND **zeme** Fe 5.2
LARGE **liels** adj. 3.1
LAST: at last **beidzot** adv. 3.3
LAUGH **smieties** I-reg. 3.3
LAY, put **likt** I-k/c 4.1
LAY oneself down **likties** I-k/c 4.2
LE LEAD **vadīt** III-ī 5.1
LEAD ABOUT **vadāt** II-ā 5.2
LEADER, male **vadītājs** Ma 5.1
" , fem. **vadītāja** Fa "
LEAP **lēkt** I-reg. 5.2
LEARN **mācīties** III-i 3.1
LEARN to remember **iemācīties** III-i 4.2
LEAST: at least **vismaz** adv. 5.1
LEATHER **āda** Fa 5.1
LEAVE behind **atstāt** I-reg. 4.2
LEAVE, set out **izbraukt** I-reg. 5.1
LEFT, to the left **pa kreisi** 4.2
LEG and foot **kāja** Fa 2.3
LESS **mazāk** adv. 5.1
LESSON **stunda** Fa 3.3
LET **laist** I-ž/d 4.1
LI LIE, sleep **gulēt** III-e 3.2
LIE DOWN **(ap)gulties** I-ļ/l 3.3
LIFT **celt** I-ļ/l 4.1
lift/pick up **pacelt**
LIGHT in hue **gaišs** adj. 3.3
LIGHT in weight **viegls** adj. 3.2
LIKE **patikt** I-k/c 3.3.61
LIKEWISE **tāpat** adv. 2.1
LIMITED **šaurs** adj. 3.1
LINEN, napery **veļa** Fa 3.2
LISTEN **klausīties** III-i 3.3
LITTLE, adj: **mazs** 3.1
" , adv: **maz** 5.1.31
a little (bit) **drusku** adv. 5.1.31
LIVE **dzīvot** II-o 3.1
LIVING ROOM **viesistaba** Fa 3.1

LO LOAF (bread) **kukulis** Mi 5.2
LOCATE: be located **atrasties** I-reg. 3.1
LONG **garš** adj. 3.1
LONG lasting **ilgs** adj. 3.3
for a long time **ilgi** adv. 3.3
LOOK at **skatīties** III-ī 3.3
LOOK for **meklēt** II-ē 4.1
LOOK like **izskatīties** III-ī 3.1
LORD **kungs** Ma 5.1
LOUD **skaļš** adj. 3.3
LOW **zems** adj. 3.1
LUCKY **laimīgs** adj. 3.3
MA MACHINE **mašīna** Fa 5.1
MAKE **taisīt** III-ī 4.1
MAKE, prepare **gatavot** II-o 5.2
MAKE CLEAR **(pa)skaidrot** II-o 4.2
MALE, man **vīrietis** Mi 5.1
MAN **vīrs** Ma 4.2
MANAGE, get by **iztikt** I-k/c 5.1
MANAGE, run **vadīt** III-ī 5.1
MANAGER, male **vadītājs** Ma 5.1
" , fem. **vadītāja** Fa "
MANNER: in what manner **kâ** intr. 3.3
MANY **daudzi** num/pr. 3.1
not many **nedaudzi** "
MARK, grade **atzīme** Fe 4.2
MARK, sign **zīme** Fe "
MATCHING **pieskaņots** adj. 5.1
MATTER: no matter wh__ **vienalga k__** intr. //4.2
MAYBE **varbūt** adv. 2.1
ME ME **mani**; for me **man** pr. (see **es**)
MEANING **nozīme** Fe 4.2
MEAT **gaļa** Fa 4.1
MEET, await **sagaidīt** III-ī 5.2
MEET, encounter **satikt** I-k/c 5.2
MERRY **priecīgs** adj. 3.3
METAL **metāls** Ma 5.1
MI MIDDAY **pusdiena** Fa 3.3
MIDDAY MEAL **pusdienas** Fa 4.2
MIDDLE **vidus** Mu 3.2
MILE **jūdze** Fe 5.2
square mile **kvadrātjūdze** Fe 5.2
MILK **piens** Ma 4.1
MIND **prāts** Ma 4.2
MINUTE, 1/60 of hour **minūte** Fe 5.2
MINUTE, tiny **maziņš** adj. 4.2.31-e
MIRROR **spogulis** Mi 3.2
MISTAKE **kļūda** Fa 4.2
MO MOMENT **brīdis** Mi 3.3
MONDAY **pirmdiena** Fa; on **M. pirmdien** 4.2
MONEY **nauda** Fa 5.1
MORE, again **vēl** adv. 2.1
MORE, comparative: **vairāk** adv. 5.1
any more **vairs** (w. negatives) adv. 2.1

MORNING **rīts** Ma 3.3
good morning! **labrīt!** 1.2
this morning **šorīt** adv. 4.1
MOTHER **māte** Fe 2.3
MOTOR VEHICLE **automašīna** Fa 5.1
MOUNTAIN **kalns** Ma 5.2
MOUTH **mute** Fe 2.3
MR. **kungs** Ma; MRS. **kundze** Fe 5.1.
MU MUG **krūze** Fe 4.1 //.22-e.
MUCH **daudz** adv. 5.1.31
not much, a little **nedaudz** adv.
MY **mans** pr. 2.2
NA NAME **vārds** Ma 4.2
NAME: be named **saukties** I-reg. 4.1
NARRATE **stāstīt** III-ī 2.2
NARROW **šaurs** adj. 3.1
NATURE **daba** Fa 5.2
NE NEAR **tuvs** adj. 5.2
near-by **tuvu** adv. 5.2.62
NEAR, at **pie** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
NEAR, close / at hand **klāt** adv. 5.1
NEARLY **gandrīz** adv. 5.1
NEAT **kārtīgs** adj. 3.3
NECESSARY **vajadzīgs** adj. 5.1
NECK **kakls** Ma 2.3
NEED **vajadzēt** III-e 5.1
NEEDED, NEEDFUL **vajadzīgs** adj. 5.1
NEITHER - NOR **ne - ne** conj. 2.1
NEVER **nekad** adv. 4.2
NEVERTHELESS **tomēr** adv. 5.1
NEW **jauns** adj. 3.1
NI NIGHT **nakts** Fi 3.3
good night! **ar labu naktī!** 1.2
NINE **deviņi** num. 2.2 & 5.2
nineteen **deviņpadsmit** 5.2.2
ninety **deviņdesmit** "
NO NO **nē** part. 2.1
NO, not a **nekāds** pr. 5.1.61-b.
NOISY **skaļš** adj. 3.3
NOISY: be noisy **trokšņot** II-o 3.2
NONE **neviens** pr. 3.1
NOON **pusdiena** Fa 3.3
NOSE **deguns** Ma 2.3
NOSY **ziņkārīgs** adj. 3.3
NOT **ne** part. 2.1
NOT A **nekāds** pr. 5.1.61-b.
NOT AT ALL **nemaz** adv. 4.1
NOT ONLY -- BUT ALSO **ne tikai -- bet arī**
NOTE **piezīme** Fe 4.2 //5.1
NOTEBOOK **burtnīca** Fa 2.3
NOTICE (pa)**manīt** III-i 5.1
NOW **tagad** adv. 2.1; **nu** adv. 2.1
just now **nupat** adv. 4.2
well, now **nu** part. 2.1
NOW - NOW **gan - gan** conj. 4.2
NOW AND THEN **kādreiz** adv. 3.2
OB OBJECT **priekšmets** Ma 5.2; **lieta** Fa 3.2
OBSERVE **skatīt** III-ī 4.1
OBTAIN **dabūt** II-ū 4.2
OC OCCUR **notikt** I-k/c 4.2
OCEAN **okeāns** Ma 5.2
O'CLOCK **pulksten** 3.3.11-b.
OF OF COURSE **protams** adv. 4.1
OFF, away **projām**/prom adv. 4.2
OFF, from **no** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
OFF, apart **nost** adv. 5.2
OFFER (pa)**sniegt** I-reg. 4.2
OFTEN **bieži** adv. 3.3
OLD **vecs** adj. 3.1
ON ON **uz** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
ON TOP OF **virs** + gen.sg. 5.2
ONCE, at one time **kādreiz** adv. 3.2
ONE **viens** num/pr. 2.2 & 5.2.21-a.
ONLY **tikai** adv. 2.2
OPEN (as sky) **klajš** adj. 5.2
OR OR **vai** conj. 2.1
ORANGE (color) **oranžs** adj. 3.2
ORDER (to do something) **likt** I-k/c 4.1
ORDERLY, neat **kārtīgs** adj. 3.3
in orderly fashion **kārtīgi** adv.
ORDINARY **parasts** adj. 3.3
ordinarily **parasti** adv.
OT OTHER (2nd mentioned) **otrs** pr. 2.2
on the other side **otrpus** +gen.sg.5.2
OTHER (later mentioned) **cits** pr. 2.3
(some) other time **citreiz** adv. 3.2
OU OUR(S) **mūsu** 5.1.21-a.
OUT, outside **ārā** loc/adv. 3.2
OUTDOORS, the **ārs** Ma 3.2
outdoors, out **ārā** loc. = adv.
OUT OF **no** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
OV OVER, across **pār** +ac.sg. 4.2;
" " **pāri** adv. w.dat. 5.2.61
OVER, above **virs** +gen.sg. 5.2
OVERCOAT **mētelis** Mi 3.3
OVERLY / OVERMUCH **pārāk** adv. 5.1
OW OWN: one's own **savs** pr. 4.1.32
" " **pats savs** pr. 4.2.43
PA PACK, PACKET **paciņa** Fa 5.2
PACKAGE **paka** Fa 5.2
PAIN see ACHE
PAINFULLY, w. difficulty **grūti** adv. 5.2
PAINT, color **krāsa** Fa 3.2
PAIR **pāris** Mi 5.1
PANTS, trousers **bikses** Fe 3.2
PAPER **papīrs** Ma 3.2 & 5.1
PARAGRAPH **paragrafs** Ma; **rindkopa** Fa 4.2
PARCEL **paciņa** Fa 5.2

PARENTS **vecāki** Ma 2.3
PART **daļa** Fa 5.1
PARTICULAR **sevišķs** adj. 3.3
particularly **sevišķi** adv.
PASS (TIME) **pavadīt (laiku)** III-Ī 5.1
PAST the hour **pāri** adv. w.dat. 5.2.54
PAST a place/object **gar** +ac.sg. 4.2
PATH **taka** Fa 5.2
PAY **(sa)maksāt** II-ā 5.1
PE PEN **spalva** Fa 2.3
PENCIL **zīmulis** Mi 2.3
PERCEIVE **(pa)manīt** III-Ī 5.1
PHRASE **fraze** Fe, **izteiciens** Ma 4.2
PI PIECE **gabals** Ma 5.1
PIG **cūka** Fa 5.2
PITCHER **krūze** Fe 4.1
PL PLACE, spot **vieta** Fa 5.2
PLACE, put **likt** I-k/c 4.1
PLACE: take place, occur **notikt** I-k/c
PLAN, noun: **plāns** Ma 5.2 //5.2
", verb: **plānot** II-o 5.2
PLASTIC (material) **plastmasa** Fa 5.1
PLATE, dish **šķīvis** Mi 4.1
PLAY music **spēlēt** II-ē 4.2.62
PLAY games **spēlēties** II-ē 3.3
PLEASE = address part. **lūdzu** 1.2
PLEASE: be pleasing **patikt** I-k/c 3.3
PLEASED (to meet) **priecājos (iepazīties)**
PO POCKET **kabata** Fa 5.1 //1.2
POINT OUT **rādīt** III-Ī 2.3
PORTION **daļa** Fa 5.1
POSSESSION, owned thing **manta** Fa 4.1
POUND **mārciņa** Fa 5.2
POUR (liquid) **liet** I-reg. 4.1
pour in **ieliet** " "
POUR, rain **līt** I-st 5.1
PR PREPARE vb.tr: **gatavot** II-o 5.2
" itr: **gatavoties** " "
PRESENT **klāt** adv. 5.1
PRETTY **skaists** adj. 4.1
PRICE **cena** Fa 5.1
price tag **cenas zīme** 5.1
PROUD **lepns** adj. 3.3
PROVISIONS, food **pārtika** Fa 5.1
PU PULL **vilkt** I-k/c 4.1
pull open **atvilkt**
PUPIL, schoolboy **skolnieks** Ma 2.1
" , schoolgirl **skolniece** Fe "
PURCHASE **(no)pirkt** I-k/c 5.1
PURPOSE: on purpose **tīšām** adv. 5.2
PURSE **rokas soma** 5.1
PUSH **stumt** I-mj/m 4.1
push a little **pastumt**
PUT **likt** I-k/c 4.1
put down **nolikt**; put (up)on **uzlikt**
PUT ON CLOTHES a. **(uz)ģērbt** I-bj/b 4.1
b. **(uz)vilkt** I-k/c "
Q QUARTER hour **ceturksnis** Mi 5.2.54
QUESTION, noun: **jautājums** Ma 4.2
QUESTION, ask a. **jautāt** II-ā 2.1
b. **prasīt** III-Ī 4.2
QUIET **mierīgs** adj. 3.3
RA RANGE (kitchen) **plīts** Fi 3.1
RACE one another **skrieties** I-reg. 3.3
RADIO (set) **radio** M-indecl. 3.3.8-c.
RAIN, noun: **lietus** Mu 5.1
", verb: **līt** I-st "
RATHER **diezgan** adv. 3.2
RE READ **lasīt** III-Ī 3.2
read a whole writing **izlasīt** 4.2
reading **lasīšana** Fa 4.2
READY **gatavs** adj. 4.1
READY: get ready: **gatavoties** II-o 5.2
" " **taisīties** III-Ī 4.1
REALLY **tiešām** adv. 4.1
REAR, the **aizmugure** Fe 3.2
in the rear **aizmugurē** loc. 3.2
RECOGNIZE **pazīt** I-st 4.1
RECOUNT, tell **(pa)stāstīt** III-Ī 5.1
RED **sarkans** adj. 3.2
REFRIGERATOR **ledusskapis** Mi 3.1
REMAIN **palikt** I-k/c 2.2
REMARK **piezīme** Fe 4.2
REMEMBER **atcerēties** III-ē 5.1
REMOTE **tāls** adj. 5.2
REPAIR **labot** II-o 4.2
REPEAT **atkārtot** II-o 4.2
REST (up) **atpūsties** I-š/t 3.3
RESTLESS **nemierīgs** adj. 3.3
RESTRICTED **šaurs** adj. 3.1
RESULT (in) **iznākt** I-k/c 5.2
REVIEW **atkārtot** II-o 4.2
RI RIDE (horseback) **jāt** I-reg. 5.2
RIDE (vehicle) **braukt** I-reg. 5.1
RIDE ABOUT (veh.) **braukāt** II-ā 5.2.63
RIGHT **pareizs** adj. 4.2
RIGHT / TO THE RIGHT **pa labi** 4.2
RIGHT: set right **pārlabot** II-o 4.2
RIGHT AWAY **tūlīt** / **tūliņ** adv. 3.3
RIGHT NOW **pašlaik** adv. 3.1
RIP **plēst** I-š/t 4.1
RIVER **upe** Fe 5.2
RO ROAD **ceļš** Ma 5.2
ROCK **akmens** Mi 5.2
ROOF **jumts** Ma 4.2
ROOM **istaba** Fa 3.1
ROTATE, vb.tr: **griezt** I-ž/z 4.1
" itr: **griezties** " "
RUN (on foot) **skriet** I-reg. 3.2
RUN ABOUT (on foot) **skraidīt** III-Ī 5.2.63

RUN, flow **tecēt** III-ē 4.1
SA SAD **skumjš** adj. 3.3
SAKE: for the sake of **dēļ** +gen.sg. 5.2
SALE **izpārdošana** Fa 5.1
put on sale **izpārdot** I-reg. 5.1
SALES CLERK, male: **pārdevējs** Ma 5.1
fem. **pārdevēja** Fa "
SAME: the same **tas pats** pr. 4.2.42
of the same kind **tāds pats** pr. 4.2.
all the same **tik un tā** 4.2 //.42
in the same way **tāpat** 2.1
in the same way as **tāpat kā** 4.2
SAMPLE, taste (pa)**garšot** II-o 4.1
SAND **smilts**, mostly pl. **smiltis** Fi 5.2
SAP, juice **sula** Fa 4.1
SATCHEL **soma** Fa 2.3
SATURDAY **sestdiena** Fa 4.2
on Saturday **sestdien** "
SAUSAGE **desa** Fa 4.2
SAY a. **sacīt** III-ī 2.1
b. **teikt** I-reg. 4.2.94
say in return **atteikt**
SC SCHOOL **skola** Fa 3.1
SCHOOLBOY **skolnieks** Ma 2.1
SCHOOLGIRL **skolniece** Fe "
SE SEA **jūra** Fa 5.2
SEASIDE **jūrmala** Fa 5.2
SEAT **sēdeklis** Mi 5.1
SEE **redzēt** III-ē 4.1
(I'll) see you! **uz redzēšanos!** 1.2
SEEK **meklēt** II-ē 4.1
SEEM **likties** I-k/c 4.2.82-c.
SEIZE **noķert** I-reg. 5.2
-SELF, reflexive **sev-** pr. 4.1.31
(see also Declension Chart)
-SELF, emphatic **pats** pr. 4.2.41
by oneself **viens pats** 4.2.42-a.
SELL **pārdot** I-reg. 5.1
SEMESTER **semestris** Mi 5.2
SENSE, mind **prāts** Ma 4.2
SENSE, perceive **just** I-reg. 5.2
SENTENCE **teikums** Ma 4.2
SET OUT, leave **izbraukt** I-reg. 5.1
SET RIGHT, correct (**pār**)**labot** II-o 4.2
SEVEN **septiņi** num. 2.2 & 5.2
seventeen **septiņpadsmit** 5.2.2 & .22
seventy **septiņdesmit** " "
SEVERAL **vairāki** num/pr. 3.1
SH SHE **viņa** pr. 2.1
SHELF **plaukts** Ma 3.1
SHIP **kuģis** Mi 5.2
SHIRT **krekls** Ma 3.3
SHOE **kurpe** Fe 3.3
SHOP, store **veikals** Ma 5.1
SHOP, verb: **pirkties** I-k/c 5.1
go shopping **iepirkties** "
SHORE **krasts** Ma 5.2
SHORT **īss** adj. 3.1
SHOW **rādīt** III-i 2.3
SHOW UP, appear **ierasties** I-reg. 5.1
SI SIDE, edge **mala** Fa 3.2
SIDE, direction **puse** Fe 4.1
SIDE: prepositional **-pus** +gen.sg. 5.2.
on both sides **abpus** 5.2.42-c.
on this side **šaipus** "
on the other side **otrpus** "
SIDE STREET **sāniela** Fa 5.1
SIGN **zīme** Fe 4.2
SILENT **kluss** adj. 3.3
be silent **klusēt** II-ē 3.2
SIMILAR **tāds pats** 4.2.42
SINCE **kopš** +gen.sg. 5.2.42-b.
SING **dziedāt** III-ā 4.2
singing **dziedāšana** Fa
SINK (basin) **izlietne** Fe 3.1
SISTER **māsa** Fa 2.2
SIT **sēdēt** III-ē 3.2
be able to sit **nosēdēt** 5.2
SIT DOWN (ap)**sēsties** i-ž/d 3.3
SITUATE: be situated **atrasties** I-reg. 3.1
SIX **seši** num. 2.2 & 5.2
sixteen **sešpadsmit** 5.2.22
sixty **sešdesmit** "
SIZE **lielums** Ma 5.1
SK SKIN **āda** Fa 5.1
SKIRT **brunči** Mi 3.2; **svārki** Ma 4.1
SKY **debess**, mostly pl. **debesis** Fi 5.2
SL SLEEP **gulēt** III-ē 3.2
sleeping **gulēšana** Fa 4.2
SM SMALL **mazs** adj. 3.1
SN SNAP APART (**pār**)**trūkt** I-st 5.1
SO SO, thus **tā** adv. 3.2
modifying adj/adv: **tik** adv. 3.3
SOAP **ziepes** Fe 4.1
SOCK **zeķe** Fe 3.2
SOFA **dīvāns** Ma 3.1
SOIL, land **zeme** Fe 5.2
SOME, a **kāds** pr. 5.1.61
SOME, a few **daži** num/pr. 3.1
SOMEBODY / SOMEONE **kāds** 5.1.61-a.
SOMETHING **kaut kas** pr. 5.1
SOMETIMES **dažreiz** adv. 3.2
SOME OTHER TIME **citreiz** adv. 3.2
SOMEWHERE **kaut kur** adv. 5.2
SONG **dziesma** Fa 4.2
SOON **drīz** adv. 2.2
SOUND, hale **vesels** adj. 4.2
SP SPECIAL **sevišķs** adj. 3.3
(e)specially **sevišķi** adv.

SP SPEND, waste **tērēt** II-ē 5.1
spend it all **iztērēt, notērēt**
SPEND (TIME) **pavadīt (laiku)** III-ī 5.1
SPINE **mugura** Fa 2.3
SPOON **karote** Fe 4.1
teaspoon **tējkarote**
SPOT, place **vieta** Fa 5.2
SPREAD (ITSELF) **plēsties** I-s/t 5.2
SPRING season **pavasaris** Mi 5.2
ST STAND **stāvēt** III-e 3.2
START, noun: **sākums** Ma 5.2
" , verb: **sākt** I-k/c 4.1
START: get started **sākties** I-k/c 3.3
STATE, independent **valsts** Fi 5.2
" , federated **štats** Ma "
STAY, remain **palikt** I-k/c 2.2
STILL **kluss** adj. 3.3
be still **klusēt** II-ē 3.2
STILL, again **vēl** adv. 2.1
STILL, nevertheless **tomēr** adv. 5.1
STOCKING **zeķe** Fe 3.2
STOMACH **vēders** Ma 2.3
STONE **akmens** Mi 5.2
STORE **veikals** Ma 5.1
dept. store **universālveikals**
grocery store **pārtikas veikals**
STORY, tale **stāsts** Ma 4.2
STOVE **plīts** Fi 3.1
STREET **iela** Fa 5.1
side street **sāniela**
STROLL **staigāt** II-ā 5.2
take a stroll **pastaigāties** II-ā
STUDENT, college **students** Ma,
fem. **studente** Fe
STUDENT of any school below college:
male **skolnieks** Ma 2.1
fem. **skolniece** Fe "
STUDY **mācīties** III-ī 3.1
STUDY SUBJECT **mācību priekšmets** 5.2
SU SUFFICE **pietikt** I-k/c 5.2.53
SUIT, become **piestāvēt** III-ē 3.3.62
be suitable, fit **derēt** III-ē 5.1
SUM: in sum **pavisam** adv. 5.1
SUMMER **vasara** Fa 5.1
SUN, bask **sauloties** II-o 5.2
SUNDAY **svētdiena** Fa 4.2
on Sunday **svētdien**
SURROUNDINGS **apkārtne** Fe 5.2
SW SWEEP **slaucīt** III-ī 4.1
SWIM, float **peldēt** III-ē 5.2
", bathe **peldēties** III-ē 5.2
TA TABLE **galds** Ma 3.1
TAKE **ņemt** I-reg. 4.1
", single act. **paņemt**

TA TAKE/drive here & there **pavadāt** II-ā 5.2
TAKE OFF clothes a. **noģērbt** I-bj/b 4.1
b. **novilkt** I-k/c "
TAKE PLACE, occur **notikt** I-k/c 4.2
TAKE TO (in arms) **aiznest** I-reg. 5.1
" "(in vehicle) **aizvest** " "
TALE **stāsts** Ma 4.2
TALK **runāt** II-ā 3.3 //3.3
TALK to one another **(sa)runāties** II-ā
TALL (tree, bldg.) **augsts** adj. 3.1
TALL (person) **garš** adj. 3.1
TASTE **garšot** II-o 4.1
taste a little **pagaršot**
TASTY **garšīgs** adj. 4.1
TE TEA **tēja** Fa 4.1
teaspoon **tējkarote** Fe 4.1
TEACH **mācīt** III-ī 4.2
TEACHER, male **skolotājs** Ma 2.1
" , fem. **skolotāja** Fa "
TEAR, rip **plēst** I-s/s 4.1
TELEVISION (medium) **televizija** Fa 3.3
TELEVISION SET **televizors** Ma 3.1
TELL **stāstīt** III-ī 2.2
retell **atstāstīt** 4.2
TELL TO, order **likt** I-k/c 4.1
TEMPERATURE **temperātūra** Fa 5.2
TEN **desmit** num. 2.2
TENT **telts** Fi 5.2
TEST, noun: **pārbaudījums** Ma 4.2
", verb: **parbaudīt** III-ī "
TH THANKS! **Paldies!** 1.2
THAT, demonstrative: **tas** pr. 3.2.2
(see also Declension Chart)
THAT, relative: **kas** pr. 4.2.81-e.
THAT, in noun clause: **ka** intr. 4.1
THEIR **viņu** (pers.), **to** (objs.) 5.1.21-a.
THEM -- see THEY
THEN **tad** adv. 2.1
now and then **kādreiz** adv. 3.2
THERE **tur** adv. 3.2
from there **no turienes**
to there **uz turieni**
THEY, persons: **viņi**, f. **viņas** 2.2.16-a & b.
", things: **tie**, f. **tās** 3.3.2
(see also Declension Chart)
THICK as a barrel **resns** adj. 3.1
" " " slab **biezs** " "
THIN " " stick **tievs** " "
" " " sheet **plāns** " "
THING, artifact **lieta** Fa 3.2
" , any object **priekšmets** Ma 5.2
THINK **domāt** II-a 4.2
THIRTEEN **trīspadsmit** num. 5.2.22
THIRTY **trīsdesmit** " "

THIS **šis** pr. 3.1 & 3.2.2
(see also Declension Chart)
this summer **šovasar** adv. 5.2
this week **šonedēļ** adv. 4.2
on this side of **šaipus** +gen.sg. 5.2
THOU -- see **tu** and YOU-SG.
THOUSAND **tūkstotis** Mi 5.2.3-b.
indecl: **tūkstoš**
THREE **trīs** num. 2.2 (& Decl. Chart)
THROUGH (penetrate) **caur** +ac.sg. 4.2
" (look/enter) **pa** +ac.sg. 4.2.1-a.
THURSDAY **ceturtdiena** Fa 4.2
on Thursday **ceturtdien**
THUS **tâ** adv. 3.2
THY/thine **tavs** pr. 2.2

TI TIME **laiks** Ma 4.1
at this time **pašlaik** adv. 3.1
at what (clock) time **cikos** 3.3
TIME, occasion **reize** Fe
at one time **reiz** adv. 4.2
times (multipl.) **-reiz** "
TIME: spend time **pavadīt laiku** 5.1
TINY **maziņš** adj. 4.2.31-e.
TIP, end **gals** Ma 5.1

TO TO, toward **uz** +ac.sg. 4.1 & 4.2
TO, in ratios **pret** +ac.sg. 4.2
TO; up to **līdz** +dat. 4.2
TODAY **šodien** adv. 2.1
TOIL, noun: **darbs** Ma 4.2
", verb: **strādāt** II-ā 5.1
TOMORROW **rīt** adv. 2.1
TOO, also **arī** part. 2.1
TOO, overly **pārāk** adv. 5.1
TOO BAD **žēl** 1.2
TOOL **rīks** Ma 3.1
TOOTH **zobs** Ma 4.1
TOP SIDE **augša** Fa 3.2
TOTALLY **pavisam** adv. 5.1
TOTE, carry **nest** I-reg. 5.1
TOURIST **tūrists** Ma 5.2
TOWEL **dvielis** Mi 5.1
TOWN **pilsēta** Fa 5.2

TR TRAIN **vilciens** Ma 5.2
TRAVEL **ceļot** II-o 5.2
TREE **koks** Ma 3.1
TRIP **brauciens** Ma 5.1
TROUSERS **bikses** Fe 3.2
TRUCK **kravas (auto)mašīna** 5.1

TU TUESDAY **otrdiena** Fa 4.2
on Tuesday **otrdien** "
TURKEY **tītars** Ma 5.2
TURN, vb.tr: **griezt** I-z/z 4.1
tur a little **pagriezt** "
TURN oneself **(pa)griezties** I-z/z 4.1

TW TWELVE **divpadsmit** num. 3.3 & 5.2.2
TWENTY **divdesmit** " --- "
TWO **divi** " 2.2 "

U UNCLE **krusttēvs** Ma 5.2
UNDER **zem** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
UNDERSIDE **apakša** Fa 3.2
UNDERSTAND **saprast** I-i 4.2
UNDERWEAR **apakšveļa** Fa 3.2
UNTIL **līdz** +dat 4.2.11
UNWELL **nevesels** adj. 4.2
UPSTAIRS, on upper level **augšā** loc. 3.2
UP(WARD) **uz augšu** 4.2
UPON **uz** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2
US **mūs** pr.; for us **mums**; see **mēs** & WE
USE **lietot** II-o 4.2
USE UP, spend **notērēt / iztērēt** II-ē 5.1
USEFUL: be useful **derēt** III-ē 5.1
USUAL **parasts** adj. 3.3
usually **parasti** adv.
UTENSIL **rīks** Ma 3.1

V VACATION **brīvlaiks** Ma 5.2
VALLEY **leja** Fa 3.2
VAN **kravas (auto)mašīna** 5.1
VEHICLE (motor) **automašīna** Fa 5.1
VERY **ļoti** adv. 3.1
VERY: the very ___ **pats** ___ 4.2.41-a.
VESSEL **trauks** Ma 3.1
VICINITY **apkārtne** Fe 5.2
VOICE **balss** Fi 4.2

WA WAIT **gaidīt** III-ī 5.1
wait a little **pagaidīt**
WAKE **mosties** I-st 4.2
wake up **pamosties**
WALK, go on foot **iet** I-irreg. 2.2 & 3.1.15
WALK about **staigāt** II-ā 5.2
take a walk **pastaigāties** II-a 5.2
WALL **siena** Fa 3.1
WANT **gribēt** III-ē 4.1
WANT, intensive: **gribēties** III-ē 5.1.43
WARM **silts** adj. 4.1
WASH **mazgāt** II-ā 4.1
WASH oneself **mazgāties** II-ā 3.3
WASTE, spend **tērēt** II-ē 5.1
waste it all **iztērēt / notērēt**
WATCH (or clock) **pulkstenis** Mi 3.3
WATER **ūdens** Mi 4.1
WAY **ceļš** Ma 5.2
WAY: in what way **kâ** intr. 3.3
that way, so **tâ** adv. 3.2
that way, to there **uz turieni** 4.2

WE WE **mēs** pr. 2.2; see Declension Chart
WEATHER **laiks** Ma 4.1
WEDNESDAY **trešdiena** Fa 4.2
on Wednesday **trešdien**

WEEK **nedēļa** Fa 4.2
this week **šonedēļ** adv. 4.2
WEKEND **nedēļas nogale** 5.1
WEEP **raudāt** III-ā 4.2
WEIGH **svērt** I-reg. 5.2
WEIGH oneself **svērties** I-reg. 5.2
WELCOME: you are welcome **lūdzu** 1.2
WELL, hale **vesels** adj. 4.2
WELL, adv: **labi** 1.2 & 3.3
WELL, intr: **nu** 2.1
WELL: do well(in) **veikties** I-reg. 4.2

WH WHAT **kas** pr. 2.1
WHEN **kad** intr. 3.3
at what (clock) time **cikos** 3.3
WHENCE **no kurienes** 5.1
WHERE **kur** intr. 2.1 & 2.3
WHERE FROM **no kurienes** 5.1
WHERE TO **uz kurieni** 4.2
WHICH (ONE) **kurš** pr. 3.2
WHILE, noun: **brīdis** Mi 3.3
WHILE, intr: **kamēr** 5.1
WHITE **balts** adj. 3.2
WHITHER **uz kurieni** 4.2
WHO **kas** pr. 2.1
WHOLE, entire **viss** pr. 4.1.91-b.
WHOLE, sound **vesels** adj. 4.2
WHOM **ko**, for whom **kam** pr. 2.1 (see **kas**)
WHOSE **kā** (gen. of **kas**) 5.1.51
WHY **kāpēc** / **kādēļ** intr. 3.3.74

WI WIDE **plats** adj. 3.1
WIDEN itself **izplēsties** I-š/t 5.2
WILD ANIMAL **meža dzīvnieks** 5.2
WINDOW **logs** Ma 3.1
WINE **vīns** Ma 4.2
WINTER **ziema** Fa 5.2
WIPE **slaucīt** III-ī 4.1
wipe off **noslaucīt**
WIPE, dry oneself **slaucīties** III-ī 4.1
WISH, want **gribēt** III-ē 4.1
WITH **ar** +ac.sg. 4.1 & 4.2
along with **līdz** / **līdzi** postp.4.2.95
WITHOUT **bez** +gen.sg. 5.1 & 5.2

WO WOMAN **sieviete** Fe 5.1
WOOD (material) **koks** Ma 5.1
WOODS **mežs** Ma 4.2
WORD **vārds** Ma 4.2
WORK, noun: **darbs** Ma 4.2
WORK, verb: **strādāt** II-ā 5.1

WR WRITE **rakstīt** III-ī 3.2
write down **pierakstīt** 4.2
writing **rakstīšana** Fa "
WRITING, article **raksts** Ma 4.2
WRONG **nepareizs** adj. 4.2

Y YARD **dārzs** Ma 3.1
YEAR **gads** Ma 4.2
YELLOW **dzeltens** adj. 3.2
YES **jā** part. 2.1
YESTERDAY **vakar** adv. 2.1
YOU-SG. **tu** pr. 2.1.31 (see Decl. Chart)
YOU-PL. **jūs** pr. 2.2 (see Decl. Chart)
YOUNG **jauns** adj. 3.1
YOUR-SG. **tavs** pr. 2.2
YOUR-PL. **jūsu** (gen. of **jūs**) 5.1.21-a.

Z ZERO **nulle** Fe 5.2

ADDENDA:

WORK SHEETS AND CHARTS

THE WORK SHEET BLANKS, one for conjugation and the the other for declension, have the convenience of ruled spaces in which to fill in various forms. These blanks are useful for home assignments and class tests.

THE DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION CHARTS give an overview of handling subtypes.

For special pronominal declensions go to the bottom part of the chart on page 132.

For the past tense conjugation go to the charts on page 105.

For the future tense conjugation go to the charts on pages 133-4.

CONJUGATION EXERCISES

			_____
1.SG.	_____	_____	_____
2.SG.	_____	_____	_____
3.COM.	_____	_____	_____
1.PL.	_____	_____	_____
2.PL.	_____	_____	_____
1.SG.	_____	_____	_____
2.SG.	_____	_____	_____
3.COM.	_____	_____	_____
1.PL.	_____	_____	_____
2.PL.	_____	_____	_____
1.SG.	_____	_____	_____
2.SG.	_____	_____	_____
3.COM.	_____	_____	_____
1.PL.	_____	_____	_____
2.PL.	_____	_____	_____
___	_____	_____	_____
___	_____	_____	_____
___	_____	_____	_____

DECLENSION EXERCISES

SG.NOM:			
GEN:			
DAT:			
ACC:			
LOC:			
PL.NOM:			
GEN:			
DAT:			
ACC:			
LOC:			

SG.NOM:			
GEN.			
DAT:			
ACC:			
LOC:			
PL.NOM:			
GEN:			
DAT:			
ACC:			
LOC:			

MASCULINE NOUN DECLENSION PATTERNS

	Ma-1	Ma-2	Mi-1	Mi-2	Mi-3	Mi-4	Mi-5	Mu
SINGULAR:								
NOM.kas?	koks	mežs	skapis	pulksteņis	akmens	pāris	kuģis	ļeņdus
GEN. kā?	koka	meža	skapja	pulksteņa	akmens	pāŗa	kuģa	ļeņdus
DAT.kam?	kokam	mežam	skapim	pulksteņim	akmenim	pārim	kuģim	ļeņdum
ACC. ko?	koku	mežu	skapi	pulksteņi	akmeņi	pāri	kuģi	ļeņdu
LOC.kur?	kokā	mežā	skapī	pulksteņī	akmeņī	pārī	kuģī	ļeņdū
PLURAL:								
NOM.kas?	koki	meži	skapji	pulksteņi	akmeņi	pāŗi	kuģi	ļeņdi
GEN. kā?	koku	mežu	skapju	pulksteņu	akmeņu	pāŗu	kuģu	ļeņdu
DAT.kam?	kokiem	mežiem	skapjiem	pulksteņiem	akmeņiem	pāŗiem	kuģiem	ļeņdiem
ACC. ko?	kokus	mežus	skapjus	pulksteņus	akmeņus	pāŗus	kuģus	ļeņdus
LOC.kur?	kokos	mežos	skapjos	pulksteņos	akmeņos	pāŗos	kuģos	ļeņdos

FEMININE NOUN DECLENSION PATTERNS

	Fa-1	Fa-2	Fe-1	Fe-2	Fe-3	Fe-4	Fi-1	Fi-2	Fi-3
SINGULAR:									
NOM.kas?	māja	augša	virtuve	tase	piere	zeķe	zivs	plīts	acs
GEN. kā?	mājas	augšas	virtuves	tases	pieres	zeķes	zivs	plīts	acs
DAT.kam?	mājai	augšai	virtuvei	tasei	pierei	zeķei	zivij	plītij	acij
ACC. ko?	māju	augšu	virtuvi	tasi	pieri	zeķi	zivi	plīti	aci
LOC.kur?	mājā	augšā	virtuvē	tasē	pierē	zeķē	zivī	plītī	acī
PLURAL:									
NOM.kas?	mājas	augšas	virtuves	tases	pieres	zeķes	zivis	plītis	acis
GEN. kā?	māju	augšu	virtuvju	tašu	pieŗu	zeķu	zivju	plīšu	acu
DAT.kam?	mājām	augšām	virtuvēm	tasēm	pierēm	zeķēm	zivīm	plītīm	acīm
ACC. ko?	mājas	augšas	virtuves	tases	pieres	zeķes	zivis	plītis	acis
LOC.kur?	mājās	augšās	virtuvēs	tasēs	pierēs	zeķēs	zivīs	plītīs	acīs

OBSERVATIONS:

1. If a palatalization is already present in the **nom. sg., it is maintained in all the other cases.** See the Patterns Ma-2, Mi-5, Fa-2, Fe-4.

2. The acoustically **high stems** Mi, Fi & Fe **can IOTICIZE OR PALATALIZE THEIR BASE ENDS.** Mi does this in the gen. sg. and the whole plural, Fi & Fe only in the gen. plural. However, a number of Fi **omit** the palatalization (Pattern Fi-3). We do **not** palatalize the base-end **-r-** (Patterns Mi-4 & Fe-3). See the lists on pp. 130-131 & 144.

3. The nouns of Mi-3 pattern **repeat** the nominative ending **in the gen. sg.** also. This ending is **only -s without the stem marker -i-**. Beginning with the dat. sg., their declension becomes **regular.** All Fi nouns have a similar nom. & gen. sg. relationship.

4. In the acc. sg. the high stems take **the highest vowel -i**, and the low stems (Ma, Mu, Fa) take **the lowest vowel -u**.

5. The loc. sg. ending is the **lengthened stem vowel.**

6. In the gen. pl. **ALL NOUNS take the ending -u.**

7. In all other plural cases the **feminines retain their stem vowels,** but the **masculines have a common ending set** for all three declensional stems.

PRESENT TENSE & IMPERATIVE PATTERNS

IST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE:

kļūt: kļūst, kļuva, kļūs become
saprast: saprot,-prata,-pratīs understand
skriet. skrien, skrēja, skries run
liet: lej, lēja, lies pour
nest: neņ, nesa, nesīs tote
likt: liek, lika, liks put
augt: aug, auga, augs grow
dzert: dzer, dzēra, dzers drink

	I-st	I-i	I-reg.	I-reg.	I-reg.	I-k/c	I-g/dz	I-r(/ŗ)
1.sg.	kļūstu	saprotu	skrienu	leju	neņsu	lieku	augu	dzeŗu
2.sg.	kļūsti	saproti	skrien	lej	nes	liec	audz	dzer
3.com.	kļūst	saprot	skrien	lej	neņ	liek	aug	dzeŗ
1.pl.	kļūstam	saprotam	skrienam	lejam	neņsam	liekam	augam	dzeŗam
2.pl.	kļūstat	saprotat	skrienat	lejat	neņsat	liekat	augat	dzeŗat
2.sg.	kļūsti!	saproti!	skrien!	lej!	nes!	liec!	audz!	dzer!
2.pl.	kļūstiet!	saprotiet!	skrieniet!	lejiet!	nesiet!	liecieet!	audziet!	dzeriet!

IST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE:

ģērbt: ģērbj, ģērba, ģērbs clothe
kāpt: kāpj, kāpa, kāps climb
stumt: stumj, stūma, stums push
plēst: plēš, plēsa, plēsīs tear
pūst: pūš, pūta, pūtīs blow
griezt: griež, grieza, griezīs turn
laist: laiž, laida, laidīs let
celt: ceļ, cēla, cels lift

	I-bj/b	I-pj/p	I-mj/m	I-š/s	I-š/t	I-ž/z	I-ž/d	I-ļ/l
1.sg.	ģērbju	kāpju	stumju	plēšu	pūšu	griežu	laižu	ceļu
2.sg.	ģērb	kāp	stum	plēs	pūt	griez	laid	cel
3.com.	ģērbj	kāpj	stumj	plēš	pūš	griež	laiž	ceļ
1.pl.	ģērbjam	kāpjam	stumjam	plēšam	pūšam	griežam	laižam	ceļam
2.pl.	ģērbjat	kāpjat	stumjat	plēšat	pūšat	griežat	laižat	ceļat
2.sg.	ģērb!	kāp!	stum!	plēs!	pūt!	griez!	laid!	cel!
2.pl.	ģērbiet!	kāpiet!	stumiet!	plēsiet!	pūtiet!	grieziet!	laidiet!	celiet!

IST CONJUGATION, REFLEXIVE:

	'race' I-reg.	'rush' I-reg.	'seem' I-k/c	'dress' I-bj/b	'turn' I-ž/z	'rise' I-ļ/l
1.sg.	skrienos	neņsos	liekos	ģērbjos	griežos	ceļos
2.sg.	skrienies	nesies	liecies	ģērbies	griezies	celies
3.com.	skrienas	neņsas	liekas	ģērbjas	griežas	ceļas
1.pl.	skrienamies	neņsamies	liekamies	ģērbjamies	griežamies	ceļamies
2.pl.	skrienaties	neņsaties	liekaties	ģērbjaties	griežaties	ceļaties
2.sg.	skrienies!	nesies!	liecies!	ģērbies!	griezies!	celies!
2.pl.	skrienieties!	nesieties!	liecieties!	ģērbieties!	griezieties!	celieties!

The verbs with the base-end -r- can be conjugated with no -ŗ- (as I-reg.)
If no -j- or palatalization follows, the base -ę- (-ē-) is broad, except in the 2nd sg & imperatives (see neņsu & neņsos patterns).
The reflexives continue all the base-end changes (from k/c to ļ/l on our list) that the active I. conjugation verbs have.
In the reflexive, the I-st & I-i verbs don't differ from the I-reg. pattern.

FOR THE PAST TENSE SAMPLES see p.105. FOR THE FUTURE TENSE SAMPLES see pp. 133-4.

PRESENT TENSE & IMPERATIVE PATTERNS

II. CONJUGATION, ACTIVE:
mazgāt: mazgā, -gāja, -gās wash
kavēt: kavē, kavēja, kavēs hinder
labot: labo, laboja, labos repair
dabūt: dabū, dabūja, dabūs obtain

II. CONJUGATION, REFLEXIVE:
mazgāties: mazgājas,-gājās,-gāsies wash up
kavēties: kavējas,-vējās, -vēsies linger
laboties: labojas,-bojās, -bosies reform

	II-ā	II-ē	II-o	II-ū	II-ā	II-ē	II-o
1.sg.	mazgāju	kavēju	laboju	dabūju	mazgājos	kavējos	labojos
2.sg.	mazgā	kavē	labo	dabū	mazgājies	kavējies	labojies
3.com.	mazgā	kavē	labo	dabū	mazgājas	kavējas	labojas
1.pl.	mazgājam	kavējam	labojam	dabūjam	mazgājamies	kavējamies	labojamies
2.pl.	mazgājat	kavējat	labojat	dabūjat	mazgājaties	kavējaties	labojaties
2.sg.	mazgā!	kavē!	labo!	dabū!	mazgājies!	kavējies!	labojies!
2.pl.	mazgājiet!	kavējiet!	labojiet!	dabūjiet!	mazgājieties!	kavējieties!	labojieties!

The active 2nd sg. & 3rd com. have no ending, and both are exactly alike.
FOR THE PAST TENSE SAMPLES see p. 105. FOR THE FUTURE TENSE SAMPLES see p. 134.

III. CONJUGATION, ACTIVE:
zināt: zina, zināja, zinās know
dziedāt: dzied, -dāja, -dās sing
mācīt: māca, mācīja, mācīs teach
sēdēt: sēd/sēž, sēdēja, sēdēs sit

III. CONJUGATION, REFLEXIVE:
sazināties: sazinās,-nājās,-nāsies communicate
mācīties: mācās, mācījās, mācīsies learn
redzēties: rędzas, redzējas, redzēsies see (one another)

	III-ā	III-ā	III-ī	III-ē	III-ē	III-ā	III-ī	III-ē
1.sg.	zinu	dziedu	mācu	sēdu	sēžu	sazinos	mācos	rędzos
2.sg.	zini	dziedi	māci	sēdi	sēdi	sazinies	mācies	redzies
3.com.	zina	dzied	māca	sēd	sēž	sazinās	mācās	rędzas
1.pl.	zinām	dziedam	mācām	sēdam	sēžam	sazināmies	mācāmies	rędzamies
2.pl.	zināt	dziedat	mācāt	sēdat	sēžat	sazināties	mācāties	rędzaties
2.sg.	zini!	dziedi!	māci!	sēdi!	sēdi!	sazinies!	mācies!	redzies!
2.pl.	ziniet!	dziediet!	māciet!	sēdiet!	sēdiet!	sazinieties!	mācieties!	redzieties!

Those III. conjugation verbs that have an -a in the 3rd com. active LENGTHEN IT TO -ā- in the active plural and 3 reflexive forms. They are the verbs that belong to the III-ā and III-ī divisions.

All III-ē verbs HAVE NO ENDING IN THE 3RD COM. ACTIVE, and so do two III-ā verbs, dziedāt 'sing' and raudāt 'weep'. They all have a short -a- in the active plural and 3 reflexive forms.

The III-ē verbs, when they have some form changes, are similar to the I. conjugation verbs: the verb sēdēt 'sit' can have ž/z interchange, and the verb gulēt 'lie' has ļ/l interchange in the same forms as the I. conj. verbs. THE REFLEXIVES of these two verbs (sēsties 'sit down', gulties 'lie down') belong to the I. conjugation.

FOR THE PAST TENSE SAMPLES see p. 105. FOR THE FUTURE TENSE SAMPLES see p. 134.

9 –

Latvian Ev. Lutheran
Church of New York
LIBRARY
BROOKLYN. N.Y. 11215